READING & WRITING VIETNAMESE

Learn to Read, Write and Pronounce Vietnamese Correctly

- ✓ Designed for complete beginners
- ✓ Pronounce Vietnamese words and tones correctly
- ✓ Learn hundreds of basic vocabulary and phrases
- ✓ Practice reading and writing Vietnamese sentences



tay

[tăy¹] "word" nước

[nŭuhk²]
"water"

đĩa

[deeuh³] "plate"

ngủ

[ngoo⁴] "to sleep"

chiều

[chyehw⁵] "afternoon"

đẹp

[dep⁶]
"beautiful"





To access the online audio recordings and printable flash cards for this book:

- 1. Check that you have an Internet connection.
- 2. Type the following URL into your web browser.

 https://www.tuttlepublishing.com/reading-and-writing-vietnamese

For support, you can email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

READING & WRITING VIETNAMESE

A WORKBOOK FOR SELF-STUDY

READING & WRITING VIETNAMESE

Learn to Read, Write and Pronounce Vietnamese Correctly

by Tri C. Tran, PhD
Illustrated by Nguyen Thi Hop & Nguyen Dong

TUTTLE Publishing

Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

Contents

Introduction 7	Proverb 45
About This Book 7	Active Vocabulary 46
Introduction to the Vietnamese Language 7	Chapter Four
The Vietnamese Writing System 8	Consonants 47
Vietnamese Dialects and Tones 8	Food and Drinks 47 Consonants 47
An Index of Grammatical terms 12 Pronunciation Guide 13	Notes on Consonant Letters 48
Terms of Address and Third-Person Reference 15	Practice 53
Colors 16	Notes on Grammar 57 Proverb 58
Chapter One	Active Vocabulary 59
The Vietnamese Writing System 17	Chapter Five
Greetings and Self-introduction 17	Tones - Tone Marks 61
The Alphabet 17	Clothing and Shopping 61
Two- and Three-Letter Combinations 18	Tones and Tone Marks 61
Spelling and Pronunciation 18	Notes on Tones 62
Notes on Spelling 19	Notes on Tone Marks
Note on Pronunciation Guide 20	(Accent Marks/ Diacritics) 62
Practice 20	Practice 63
Proverb 22	Notes on Grammar 68
Chapter Two	Proverb 70
Vowels and Vowel Accent Marks 23	Active Vocabulary 71
Professions and Description of People 23	Chapter Six
Vowels 23	Sentence Structure –
Notes on Vowels and Spelling 24	Intonation 73
Vowel Accent Marks 24	Daily Activities 73
Practice 25	Sentence Structure 73
Notes on Grammar 28	Intonation 76
Proverb 31	Practice 77
Active Vocabulary 32	Notes on Grammar 82
Chapter Three	Proverb 84
Semi-Vowels, Diphthongs,	Active Vocabulary 85
Triphthongs 33	Chapter Seven
Identifying Objects 33	Useful Words, Phrases and
Semi-vowels 33	Sentences 87
Diphthongs 33	Going places 87
Notes on Diphthongs 34	Useful Words, Phrases and Sentences 87
Triphthongs 36	Practice 89
Notes on Diphthongs 36	Notes on Grammar 94
Practice 37	Proverb 97
Notes on Grammar 42	Active Vocabulary 98

CHAPTER EIGHT

Terms of Address: A Cultural Aspect 99

Family Relationships 99

Terms of Address 99

Practice 100

Notes on Grammar 102

Proverb 103

Active Vocabulary 104

CHAPTER NINE

Particles:

"Flavors" of the Sentences 107

Health and Medical Care 107

Particles 107

Practice 108

Notes on Grammar 110

Proverb 111

Active Vocabulary 112

CHAPTER TEN

The Main Dialects of Vietnamese 113

Holidays and Entertainment 113

The Main Dialects of Vietnamese 113

Practice 116

Notes on Grammar 119

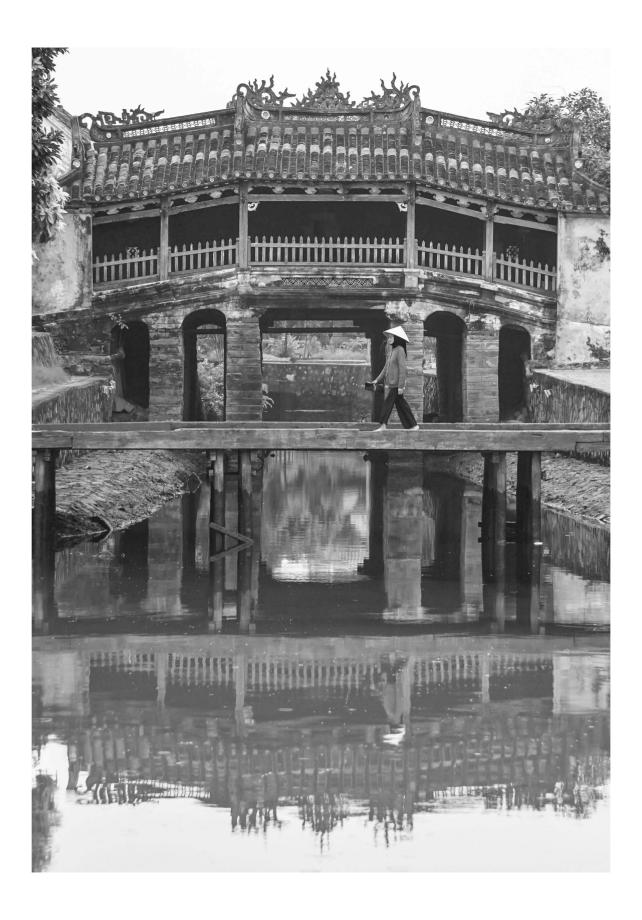
Proverb 120

Active Vocabulary 121

Answer Key to Practice Exercises 123 Vietnamese-English Vocabulary 127

English-Vietnamese Vocabulary 143





INTRODUCTION

About This Book

Reading and Writing Vietnamese for Beginners aims to open the door to modern Vietnamese for those who are interested in learning the language for various reasons, be it academic, business-related, culture-oriented or simply for the sake of speaking the language and/or enjoying its rich literary world. The book presents a detailed introduction to the language's sound system, its orthography, word formations, sentence structures, vocabulary and cultural aspects that go hand in hand with the linguistic elements. Alongside the focus on helping beginners to be able to read and write effectively in the language, the book also emphasizes the conversational component. Practice exercises include various formats: dialogue, reading comprehension, listening comprehension, sentence building, fill-in-the blanks, multiple-choice, etc. Many of the practice sections are accompanied by audio material, professionally recorded by native speakers of Vietnamese.

The book is divided into ten chapters, the contents of which are tied with various topics related to everyday activities and aspects of life such as daily routines, food, clothing, going places, family relationship, cultural and social events, etc. Each chapter also comes with a Vietnamese proverb in order to add a cultural touch to the learning process, making it fun and rewarding. Idiomatic expressions are introduced wherever and whenever applicable, helping the learner to use the language not only correctly but also expressively in conversational situations.

For self-learning purposes, the book also includes a comprehensive section of appendices, consisting of an answer key to practice exercises, an index of grammatical terms and a Vietnamese-English vocabulary list.

Introduction to the Vietnamese Language

Vietnamese belongs to the Autroasiatic language family (also known as Mon-Khmer family), which consists of several languages spoken in Southeast Asian, part of South Asia and southern China. As a national language, Vietnamese is officially used by more than 95 million speakers in Vietnam (2017 census), and also by approximately 4 million Vietnamese living outside the country. According to the 22nd edition of *Ethnologue* (2019), Vietnamese ranks the 17th in terms of number of speakers among the world's languages.

Genetically, Vietnamese is most related to the Muong language, as the two are often recognized by many linguists as the Viet-Muong subfamily. In terms of word order (syntactic structure), Vietnamese belongs to the group of SVO languages (Subject-Verb-Object), for example **Tôi học tiếng Việt**, "I learn Vietnamese."

With regard to lexicon, besides the words that are considered "native" (**ăn** "to eat," **uống** "to drink," **cơm** "rice," **trời** "heaven," **đất** "earth," etc.), there is a large body of words of Chinese origin due to 1,000 years of Chinese rule over the country (**đại học** "university," **giáo sư** "professor," **kinh tế** "economy," etc.), and a considerable number of loanwords from French as a result of 100 years of French colonization of Vietnam (**xăng** "gas," **bi** "marble," **xà-lách** "lettuce," **phô-mai** "cheese," etc.).

In morphosyntax, thanks to the richness of native words alongside words of Chinese origin, word formations in Vietnamese are based both on Vietnamese syntax (**giàu có** "wealthy," **xe đạp** "bicycle," etc.) and Chinese syntax (**phong phú** "rich," **quân xa** "military vehicle," etc.), depending on the origin of the relevant components.

Vietnamese is best characterized phonologically as a tonal language. A word can have as many as six different tones for six different meanings (ma "ghost," mà "but," má "mother," mả "tomb," mã "horse" and mạ "rice seedling"). On the segmental level, Vietnamese contains no consonant clusters and limited distributions of consonant positions—l, p, r, s and v do not appear at the end of a word, for example. On the other hand, Vietnamese has a vowel system that yields quite a rich inventory of combinations that form diphthongs (níu "to grab," núi "mountain," hoa "flower," hao "wasted," etc.) and triphthongs (chuyện "story," cười "laugh," hươu "stag," etc.) in the syllable structure of the language.

The Vietnamese Writing System

Up to the 14th century, Vietnamese was technically still a spoken language without a writing system. Classical Chinese was used in literature, documentations and other written forms of communication. In early 1400s, various scholars introduced a writing system based on Chinese characters in an attempt to record the country's spoken language. This system was named **Chữ Nôm** ("Southern Script"). Native Vietnamese words represented by this new writing system are formed by using one or more Chinese characters based on their semantic or phonetic functions. For example, the noun 媄 "mother" (equivalent to the modern spelling **mẹ**) is formed by two Chinese characters: the noun 々 ("woman") as the semantic component, and the noun 美 ("beauty") as the phonetic component, chosen for its initial consonant **m**.

Chữ Nôm was, however, a cumbersome system due to its arbitrary combination methods and the requirement that users must know Chinese to be able to understand it. For that reason, Chữ Nôm readily yielded to another writing system—Chữ Quốc Ngữ ("National Language Script")—devised by a group of European missionaries in the 17th century, who came along the French colonialists to the country in order to preach Christianity. This script is now the modern Vietnamese alphabet, based on the Latin alphabet and the adaptation of accent marks from various Romance languages. As a result, several spellings in the Vietnamese alphabet bear similarities with those of the languages spoken by the missionaries. For example, the digraph *nh* in the Vietnamese word **nho** "grape" represents the same consonant as in the Portuguese noun **banho** "bathroom." The Vietnamese noun **ghe** "boat" has the same spelling that represents a consonant very close to that of the Italian noun *ghetto* "slum." Even Romanian spelling shares the letter ă with Vietnamese spelling, which represents the same short vowel in both languages (**română** "Romanian" vs. **năng** "frequently," respectively).

Vietnamese Dialects and Tones

There are at least eight major groups of dialects in Vietnamese, roughly divided as follows, from north to south: (1) The Northeastern dialects (including the Hanoi dialect); (2) the Thanh Hoá dialects (south of the Red River delta, ending at the southern border with the

province of Nghệ An); (3) the Nghệ-Tĩnh dialects (including the provinces of Nghệ An and Hà Tĩnh, ending at the southern border with the province of Quảng Bình); (4) the Bình-Trị-Thiên dialects (between the borders with Quảng Bình to the north and Thừa Thiên to the south); (5) the Quang dialects (including the province of Quang Nam and its major city, Đà Năng); (6) the South-Central dialects (including several coastal and highland provinces in the middle part of Central Vietnam); (7) the Southeastern dialects (including coastal highland provinces and Saigon); and (8) the Southwestern dialects (including the provinces of the rest of southern Vietnam, several of which bordering Cambodia to the west).

Vietnamese dialects differ from each other in pronunciation, inflection and lexicon. The spelling \mathbf{r} , for example, represents various consonants from the northern dialects to the southern dialects. The spelling a represents a central vowel in most dialects, a front vowel in some South-Central dialects, and even a diphthong in the Quang dialects.

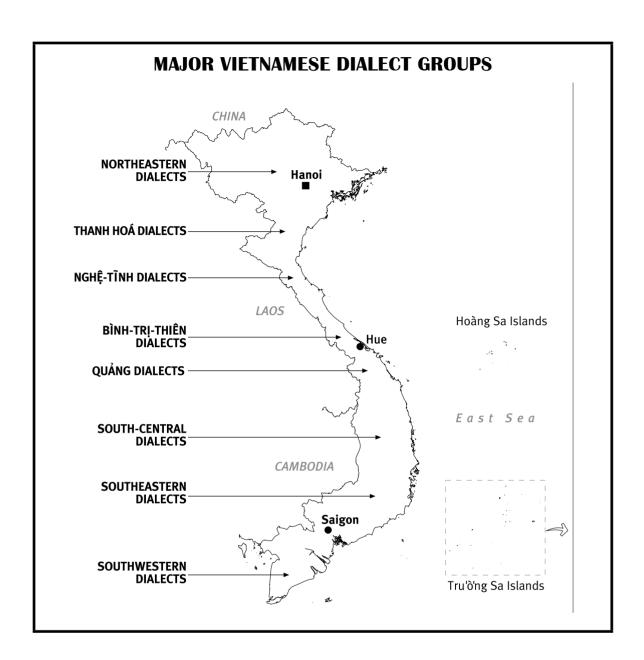
Regarding tones, while most Northeastern dialects have all the six tones, many other dialects in the central and southern regions contain only four or five tones. For example, the words swa "milk" has a different tone from the word swa "to repair" and are clearly distinguished in the Northeastern dialects, but are pronounced with the same tone in many dialects in the central and southern regions of the country.

The tone systems in some dialects are significantly lower in pitch and range than other dialects (especially those of the northern part of Central Vietnam). An example for this phenomenon is the high pitch perceived in the way Northeastern dialect speakers say the noun giá tri "value" (the first syllable has a high tone and the second, a low tone) as opposed to how the Bình-Trị-Thiên dialect speakers say it with a pitch systematically lower for both syllables.

Vocabulary varies richly from dialect to dialect. For instance, the words for "to dream" (in one's sleep) are **nằm mo** (in the northern dialects), **nằm chô** (in the Bình-Tri-Thiên dialects) and nằm chiêm bao (in many central and southern dialects). A pineapple is quả dứa in the North, but **trái thom** in the Central and the South.

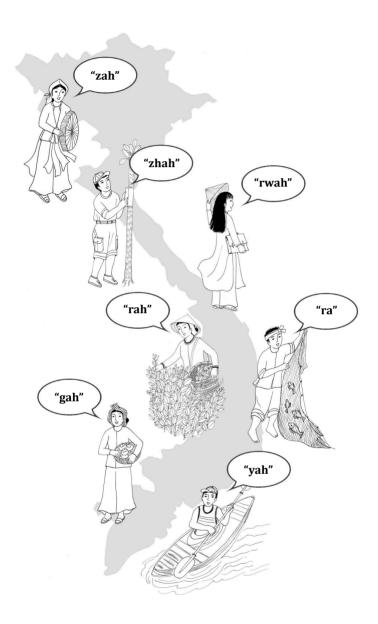
A Note on the Appearance of Some Accent Marks on Words

The reader will notice, in this book and other books containing Vietnamese texts, different typesetting techniques allow that the grave accent (`) is placed either on the left or on the right of the circumflex (^), for instance, quan or quan. This superficial difference does not interfere with the meaning of the words bearing one of the two technical options mentioned above. Both forms of the word are acceptable.



AUDIO 1

Regional pronunciations. Listen to the different pronunciations of the word RA according to various dialects in Vietnam.



AN INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

A

accent marks, *Ch.* 5 acute mark, *Ch.* 1 adjectives, demonstrative *Ch.* 2; *Ch.* 3; *Ch.* 6 adjectives, descriptive *Ch.* 3; *Ch.* 6 adverbs, *Ch.* 4 adverbs, of degree, *Ch.* 9 adverbs, of time and place, *Ch.* 6 alphabet, *Ch.* 1 approximants, *Ch.* 3

C

Chinese characters, *Intro*Chinese, *Intro*circumflex, *Ch. 1*classifiers, *Ch. 3*co-articulation, lip-rounding, *Ch. 4*consonants, *Ch. 1; Ch. 4; Ch. 10*consonant cluster, *Intro*consonants, secondary bilabial, *Ch. 4*consonants, stop, *Ch. 4; Ch. 5*constructions, weather sentence, *Ch. 10*

D

dates, Ch. 6 determiners, Ch. 3 diacritics, Ch. 5 dialects, Intro; Ch. 10 digraphs, Ch. 1 diphthongs, Intro; Ch. 3 diphthongs, on-glide, Ch. 3 dot below, Ch. 1

F

fricative articulation, Ch. 4

G

glides, Ch. 3 grave mark, Ch. 1

Н

hook, *Ch. 1* hook above, *Ch. 1*

ı

impersonal verbs, *Ch.* 4 interrogative words, *Ch.* 2; *Ch.* 6 intonation, *Ch.* 6 Italian, *Intro*

L

language, SVO, *Intro; Ch. 6*language family, Austroasiatic, *Intro*Latin alphabet, *Intro*letters, *Ch.1; Ch. 3; Ch. 4*lexicon, *Intro; Ch. 10*linking verbs, *Ch. 2*loanwords, *Intro*

M

markers, aspect, *Ch.* 8 micron, *Ch.* 1 morphosyntax, *Intro* Muong language, *Intro*

Ν

National Language Script, *Intro* non-Vietnamese letters, *Ch. 1* numbers, *Ch. 5*

P

particles, Ch. 7; Ch. 9 phonology, Intro; Ch. 10 pitch, Intro; Ch. 5 plural markers, Ch. 2; Ch. 5 Portuguese, Intro possessive case, Ch. 2; Ch. 4 pronouns, interrogative, Ch. 6 pronouns, personal Ch. 2; Ch. 3

Q

questions, choice, *Ch.* 7 questions, specific, *Ch.* 6 questions, tag, *Ch.* 7 questions, types, *Ch.* 7 questions, Yes/No, *Ch.* 7

R

Romance languages, *Intro* Romanian, *Intro*

S

semi-vowels, *Ch.*sentence structure, *Ch.*sentences, declarative, *Ch.*sentences, imperative, *Ch.*Southern Script, *Intro* spelling, *Ch.*subject complement, *Ch.*syllable structure, *Intro* syllables, *Ch.* 1; *Ch.*syllables, closed, *Ch.*syllables, open, *Ch.*syntax, *Intro*

T

time, *Ch.* 6
time, telling, *Ch.* 6
terms of address, *Ch.* 8
tilde, *Ch.* 1
tone marks, *Ch.* 1; *Ch.* 5
tones, *Intro*; *Ch.* 1; *Ch.* 5; *Ch.* 10
trigraphs, *Ch.* 1
triphthongs, *Intro*; *Ch.* 3
triphthongs, off-glide, *Ch.* 3

V

vocalic marks, *Ch.* 1; *Ch.* 2 vowels, *Ch.* 1; *Ch.* 2; *Ch.* 10

W

word formations, *Intro* word order, *Intro* writing system, *Ch.* 1

PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

This guide will show how selected letters and numbers are conventionally used to help English-speaking learners pronounce Vietnamese words, phrases, and sentences in the book.

TONES

Tone mark	Pronunciation	Word example	Pronunciation example
None	1	la	la¹
,	2	lá	la ²
~	3	lã	la ³
?	4	lå	la ⁴
•	5	là	la ⁵
	6	lạ	la^6

CONSONANTS

Spelling	Pronunciation	Word example	Pronunciation example
b	b	ba	ba¹
c, k, q	k	ca, kê, qui	ka¹, keh¹, kwi¹
ch	ch	cha	cha¹
d, gi	у	da, gia	ya¹
đ	d	đa	da¹
g, gh	g	ga, ghe	ga^{1}, ge^{1}
h	h	ha	ha¹
kh	kh	kha	kha¹
l	1	la	la¹
m	m	ma	ma¹
n	n	na	na¹
ng, ngh	ng	nga, nghe	nga¹, nge¹
nh	nh	nha	nha¹
p	p	họp	hahp ⁶
ph	f	pha	fa¹
r	r	ra	ra¹
S	sh	sa	sha¹
t	t	ta	ta¹
th	th	tha	tha¹
tr	tr	tra	tra¹
V	ν	va	va¹
X	S	xa	sa¹

VOWELS

Spelling	Pronunciation	Word example	Pronunciation example
i, y	ee	ly	lee¹
ê	eh	lê	leh¹
e	e	le	le¹
a	а	la	la¹
ă	ă	lăn	lăn¹
â	и	lân	lun¹
0	ah	lo	lah¹
ô	oh	lô	loh¹
ď	uh	lo	luh^1

Spelling	Pronunciation	Word example	Pronunciation example
u	00	lu	loo^{1}
ư	й	lư	lŭ¹

DIPHTHONGS

Spelling	Pronunciation	Word example	Pronunciation example
ai	ie	cai	kie¹
ao	aw	cao	kaw¹
ay	ăу	cay	kăy¹
au	ăw	cau	kăw¹
ây	ay	cây	kay¹
âu	ohw	câu	kohw¹
eo	ew	keo	kew¹
êu	ehw	kêu	kehw¹
ia	eeuh	kia	keeuh¹
iê, yê	yeh	kiêng, yên	kyehng¹, yehn¹
iu	eew	hiu	heew¹
oi	oy	coi	koy¹
ôi	ohy	côi	kohy¹
oʻi	uhy	cơi	kuhy¹
ua	oouh	cua	koouh¹
oa, ua	wa	loa, qua	lwa¹, kwa¹
oă, uă	wă	loăn, quăn	lwăn¹, kwăn¹
uâ	wu	quân	kwun¹
oe, ue	we	loe, que	lwe¹, kwe¹
uê	weh	quê	kweh¹
uy	wee	quy	kwee¹
ui	ooy	cui	kooy¹
uô	woh	luôn	lwohn¹
uơ	wuh	quo	kwuh¹
ưа, ươ	йиh	cưa, lươn	kŭuh¹, lŭuhn¹
ưi	йу	ngửi	ngŭy⁴
иu	йw	lưu	lŭw¹

TRIPHTHONGS

Spelling	Pronunciation	Word example	Pronunciation example
yêu, iêu	yehw	tiêu	tyehw¹
uôi	wohy	xuôi	swohy¹
ươi	ŭuhy	tươi	tŭhuy¹
ươu	ŭuhw	hươu	hŭuhw¹
uya	weeuh	khuya	khweeuh¹
uyu	weew	khuỷu	khweew ⁴
oai, uai	wie	khoai	khwie¹
oay, uay	wăy	quay	kwăy¹
uây	way	quây	kway¹
uao	waw	quào	kwaw ⁵
uau	wăw	quạu	kwăw ⁶
oeo, ueo	wew	ngoèo	ngwew⁵
uyê	wyeh	quyên	kwyehn¹

TERMS OF ADDRESS AND THIRD-PERSON REFERENCE

Below is a chart for terms of address and reference, the topic of Chapter Eight. As many other Asian languages, Vietnamese incorporates a significant amount of culture in discourse. In a conversation, addressing oneself and others in a proper way sets a positive tone for both the speaker(s) and the listener(s) for the conversation to be carried on comfortably.

	Singular	Plural	Usage
	tôi	chúng tôi	Neutral, professional; not to be used in a family setting.
1st person		chúng ta	Inclusive (referring to both speaker(s) and listener(s)).
I – we	em	chúng em	Speaker(s) considering themselves as a younger sibling.
	cháu	chúng cháu	Speaker(s) considering themselves as a nephew or niece.
	ông	các ông	To a man or men, middle-aged and up.
	bà	các bà	To a woman or women, married or older.
	cô	các cô	To a woman or women, young or unmarried.
Indnowsan	anh	các anh	To a man or men, same age as speaker or middle-aged.
2nd person	chú	các chú	To a man or men, same age as speaker's junior uncle.
you	bác	các bác	To a person or persons, same age as speaker's senior aunt or uncle.
	chị	các chị	To a woman or women, same age as speaker.
	em	các em	To a person or persons, younger than speaker.
	cháu	các cháu	To a young person or persons as nephew(s) or niece(s).
	ông ấy	các ông ấy	Referring to a man or men, middle-aged and up.
	bà ấy	các bà ấy	Referring to a woman or women, married or older.
	cô ấy	các cô ấy	Referring to a woman or women, young or unmarried.
2	anh ấy	các anh ấy	Referring to a man or men, same age as speaker or older.
3rd person <i>he – she – it – they</i>	chú ấy	các chú ấy	Referring to a man or men, considered as speaker's junior uncle(s).
110 - 5110 - 11 - 111ey	bác	các bác ấy	Referring to a person or persons, considered as senior aunt or uncle
	chị ấy	các chị ấy	Referring to a woman or women, same age as speaker or older.
	nó	chúng nó	Referring to one or more objects, animals or children.
		họ	Referring to adults in a neutral, distant way.

Notes:

- A number of terms can be used for either gender, such as em, cháu and họ.
- When there are mixed genders in the plural forms, two terms can be used together, for example các anh chị ("you all, you guys"), các ông bà ("you all"), các anh chị ấy ("they"), etc.
- When addressing an audience, the polite, plural term quý vị is usually used, as in Kính chào quý vị ("Greetings to all of you").
- The noun ban ("friend") and its plural form các ban ("friends") are also used to address a person or group of young people, respectively, in an informal way, for example Cám on các ban ("Thanks to all of you").

COLORS - MÀU SẮC

Màu means "color" and **sắc** means "shade." Like many other compound nouns in Vietnamese, the combination of a noun and another one in the same category can refer to either the general concept or the plural sense of the word.

To ask for the name of a color, say, "Màu này là màu gì?" ("What is this color?") or "Đây là màu gì?" ("What color is this?").

To ask for the color of an object, say, for example, "Chiếc xe hơi đó màu gì?" ("What color is that car?").

When using a color as a prenominal adjective, you can use the noun *màu* together with the name of the color, or simply its name, for example: "Căn nhà (màu) trắng đó đẹp quá!" ("How beautiful is that white house!").

When used as a predicate adjective, the name of the color is usually preceded by the noun *màu*: "Con mèo của tôi là màu xám."

Here are the most common colors used in everyday life, in alphabetical order, some of which have more than one name:

cam "orange"tím "purple"cà-phê sữa "coffee-and-milk; beige"trắng "white"đen "black"vàng "yellow"đỏ "red"xám "gray"hồng "pink"xanh dương "ocean blue"nâu "brown"xanh lục "green"; xanh lá cây "leaf green"

For shades of a color, add **đậm** ("dark") or **nhạt** ("light") after it. Thus, **xanh lá cây đậm** is "dark green" and **hồng nhạt** means "light pink," for example.

In colloquial Vietnamese, in order to reduce the shade of a color, speakers tend to reduplicate the name of it, either partially—by changing the phonetic tone of the color to the mid-high tone (if it is not already so)—for example, **đo đỏ** "reddish," **xanh xanh** "bluish," **tim tím** "purplish"; or wholly—by repeating exactly the same name of the color—for example, **trắng trắng** "whitish," **vàng vàng** "yellowish," **xám xám** "grayish," etc.

When a color is mixed with a secondary color, the name of the latter should follow that of the former, for example, **nâu đỏ** "red-brown," **vàng cam** "orange-yellow," **xanh xám** "graygreen," etc.

CHAPTER 1

The Vietnamese Writing System

Greetings & Self-Introduction



I. THE ALPHABET

AUDIO 1

Listen to each of the following letters and repeat after the speaker.

Letter	Name pronounced as
a	a , as in "father"
ă	like a above, with a high pitch
â	uh – with a high pitch
b	bay – brief
С	say – brief
d	yay – brief
đ	day – brief
е	eh – open
ê	ay
g	jay
h	hat
i	ee
k	kah
l	ella
m	emma

Letter	Name pronounced as
n	enna
0	awe
ô	oh – brief
Oʻ	uh
p	pay – brief
q	coo
r	era
S	ess
t	tay - brief
u	ooh
w	ugh
v	vay
X	iss
у	ee greck

II. TWO- AND THREE-I FTTER COMBINATIONS

A digraph consists of two letters representing one sound, and a trigraph consists of three consonant letters that also represent one sound as shown below:

AUDIO 2

Listen to the combinations below and repeat after the speaker.

Letter	Name pronounced as
ch	say hat
gh	jay hat
gi	jay ee
kh	kah hat
ng	enna jay
ngh	enna jay hat
nh	enna hat
ph	pay hat
th	tay hat
tr	tay era

III. SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION

The Letter D

In the alphabet, the letter **d** is listed as equivalent to two sounds. The pronunciation "zay" is that of several northern dialects, whereas the pronunciation "yay" belongs to the dialects of most of the central region—specifically from the city of Hue—down to the rest of the country in the south.

Non-Vietnamese Letters

Four non-Vietnamese letters from the Roman alphabet F, J, W and Z are used in the language when proper names or place names from other languages containing these letters are mentioned.

AUDIO 3

Listen to the names of the non-Vietnamese letters and repeat after the speaker.

Letter	Name pronounced as
F f	eff
Jј	gee
W w	vay doop
Ζz	zet

For example, the name John would be spelled out as "gee - oh - hat - enna," and the name Walter would be spelled out as "vay doop – ah – ella – tay – ay – era."

NOTES ON SPELLING

The Consonant Ng

Both **ng** and **ngh** represent the consonant **ng**. **Ng** is written before **a**, **ă**, **â**, **o**, **ô**, **o**, **u**, **w** (nga, ngăn, ngân, ngon, ngô, ngơ, ngu, ngư) and **ngh** is written before **e**, **ê**, **i** (nghe, nghê, nghi).

The Consonant K

The consonant k is represented by three letters: c, k and q. c is used before a, \check{a} , \hat{a} , o, o, o, u, u (ca, căn, cân, co, cô, cơ, cung, cưng), **k** is used before **e**, **ê**, **i** (kem, kênh, kinh), and **q** is always followed by **u** for the sound *kw* and one of the following vowel letters: **a**, **a**, **a**, **e**, **e**, **ô**, **o**, **y** (*quan*, *quan*, *qua* que, quê, quốc, quơ, quy, quyên).

The Letter D and Combination GI

In modern Vietnamese, the letter \mathbf{d} and the combination \mathbf{gi} both represent the sound \mathbf{z} in the northern dialects and the sound y in the central and southern dialects. Speakers usually rely on the meanings of the words to know which spelling applies. For example, dấu is a noun meaning "sign, mark" whereas giấu is a verb meaning "to hide."

Tone Marks

The six tones in Vietnamese pronunciation are represented in spelling by only five tone marks (the high-level tone is not shown in the spelling). When words are spelled out, accent marks that indicate tones are said at the end of the word. The names of the tone marks are: (') dấu sắc "acute mark," (`) huyền "grave mark," (') hỏi "hook above," ngã "tilde," and năng "dot below." For example, the word **tháng** is spelled out as "tay – hat – ah – enna – jay – dấu sắc."

Vowel Accent Marks

There are three vowel accent marks used for the phonetic values of various vowels, namely the breve ($\check{}$) (used in $\check{\mathbf{a}}$), the circumflex ($\hat{}$) (used in $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$ and $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$), and the hook ($\hat{}$) (used in $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ and \boldsymbol{w}). These accent marks are part of the vowel letters and are not said during the spelling-out process.

Syllables

Conventionally, in a Vietnamese text, each written unit is a syllable. If a word is monosyllabic, then the written unit is at the same time a syllable and a word. If a word consists of more than one syllable, each syllable must be written or printed separately.

```
nước ("water," "country"): monosyllabic word.
cá ("fish"): monosyllabic word.
tiếng Việt ("Vietnamese language"): two words.
đồng hồ ("watch, clock"): disyllabic word.
téo tèo teo ("teeny-weeny"): trisyllabic word.
kiến trúc sư ("architect"): compound word.
```

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION GUIDE

From this point on, words, phrases and sentences in Vietnamese will be accompanied by guiding pronunciations for English-speaking learners. Refer to Chapter 5 for descriptions and pronunciation of tones (represented by numbers in the pronunciations). For a complete guide of letters and numbers conventionally used in this pronunciation system, refer to the *Pronunciation Guide* on pages 13–14.

IV. PRACTICE

AUDIO 4

A. Spelling out words

Listen to the pronunciation of the following descriptive adjectives and repeat after the speaker. After listening, spell out orally all the adjectives by naming each of the letters in the word and indicating the accent mark at the end, if any.

Model: You see: **giỏi** $[yahy^4]$ – "good" You spell out loud: **jay – ee – aw – ee** – $d\tilde{a}u h\dot{o}i yohw^2 hahy^4$.

- 1. $\mathbf{d\tilde{e}} [yeh^3]$ "easy"
- 2. **khó** $\lceil khah^2 \rceil$ "difficult"
- 3. **lón** [*luhn*²] "big"
- 4. **nhỏ** [*nhah*⁴] "small"
- 5. **rộng** [rohngm⁶] "spacious, wide"
- 6. **hep** $\lceil hep^6 \rceil$ "narrow"
- 7. **dài** $[yie^5]$ "long"
- 8. **ngắn** [*ngăn*²] "short"
- 9. **sóm** [*shuhm*²] "early"
- 10. **trễ** [*treh*³] "late"

AUDIO 5

B. Letter and accent mark recognition

Listen to the spelling out of following nouns and write them down in the blanks provided:

- 1. ______ "table"
- 2. _____ "chair"
- 3. ______ "bed"
- 4. _____ "door"

5	"house"
6	"room"
7	"yard"
8	garden"
9	"market"
0	"hammack"

AUDIO 6

C. Asking for names

Work with a partner to ask questions and give answers as in the following dialogue. Replace the character's name with your own.



- A Chào cô! Tên cô là gì? chaw⁵ koh¹ tehn¹ koh¹ la⁵ yee⁵ Hello, Miss! What is your name?
- **B** Chào anh! Tên tôi là Hồng. chaw⁵ ănh¹ tehn¹ tohy¹ la⁵ hohngm⁵ Hello, Brother! My name is Hồng.

- A Tên cô viết như thế nào? tehn¹ koh¹ vyeht² nhŭ¹ theh² naw⁵ How is your name spelled?
- **B** Tên tôi viết là H-O-N-G-dấu huyên. tehn¹ tohy¹ vyeht² la⁵ hat oh enna jay yohw² hwyehn⁵ My name is spelled H-O-N-G-grave mark.

V. PROVERB

AUDIO 7

LỜI CHÀO CAO HƠN MÂM CỖ.

luhy⁵ chaw⁵ kaw¹ huhn¹ mum¹ koh³

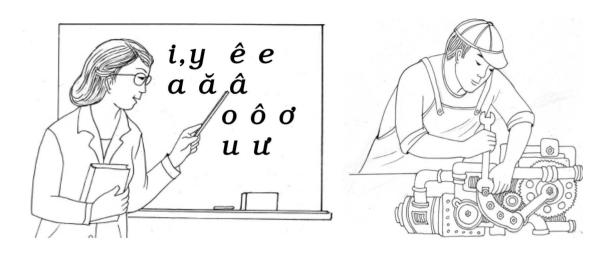
- **Literal meaning:** A greeting is higher than a tray of banquet food.
- **Figurative meaning:** Greetings must come first in social gatherings.
- **Cultural implication:** Formality, especially in public, is highly valued in Vietnamese society.



CHAPTER 2

Vowels and Vowel Accent Marks

Professions and Description of People



I. VOWELS

There are eleven vowels in Vietnamese, represented by twelve vowel letters.

AUDIO 1

Vowels. Listen to the pronunciation of Vietnamese vowels in isolation and in example words, then repeat after the speaker.

Vowel	Description/English equivalent	Example
i, y	like ee in "Lee"	ly [lee ¹] "glass"
ê	like ay in "lay," pronounced briefly	lê [leh¹] "pear"
е	like e in "lend"	len [len¹] "wool"
a	like a in "calm"	lan [lan1] "orchid"
ă	pronounced shorter than a	lăn [<i>lăn</i> ¹] "to roll"
â	like u in "lunch"	lân [lun ¹] "unicorn"
0	like aw in "law"	lo [lah ¹] "to worry"
ô	like ow in "low"	lô [loh¹] "lot"
O'	like a in "aloud"	lo [luh¹] "to ignore"
u	like 00 in "look"	lu [loo¹] "jar"
u	pronounced like u without lip rounding	lư [<i>lŭ</i> ¹] "urn"

NOTES ON VOWELS AND SPELLING

Spelling

For the most part, Vietnamese spelling is phonetic, i.e. there is a consistent relationship between letters and sounds. Regarding vowels, there are a number of cases where the spellings do not go hand in hand with the sounds. For example, the letter $\bf a$ in the combination $\bf ay$ is actually the sound of $\bf \check{a}$. The spelling rule is when $\bf a$ is followed by $\bf y$, $\bf a$ is pronounced short, as opposed to when it is followed by $\bf i$, where it is pronounced fully. Compare the pair $\bf tai$ [tie^i] "ear" ($\bf a$ more open) and $\bf tay$ [$t\check{a}y^i$] "hand" ($\bf a$ pronounced shorter). In a similar case, the letter $\bf a$ is pronounced short it is followed by $\bf u$, and open when followed by $\bf o$. Compare the pair $\bf sao$ [$shaw^i$] "star" (pronounced open) and $\bf sau$ [$sh\check{a}w^i$] "after" (pronounced short).

AUDIO 2

Vowel distinction. Listen to the following pronunciations that show the difference between the following two vowels:

```
tai [tie^1] "ear"\simtay [t \breve{a} y^1] "hand"hai [hie^1] "two"\simhay [h \breve{a} y^1] "good"sao [shaw^1] "star"\simsau [sh\breve{a}w^1] "after"lao [law^1] "javelin"\simlau [l\breve{a}w^1] "to wipe"
```

The Letters I and Y

The letters \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{y} , besides determining the phonetic value of a preceding \mathbf{a} as discussed above, can represent the same vowel in open syllables (not followed by a consonant). Whether \mathbf{i} or \mathbf{y} is used in such words depends on various factors, one of which is based on meaning. For example, \mathbf{li} [lee^1] means "millimeter" and \mathbf{ly} [lee^1] means "glass"; $\mathbf{l\hat{y}}$ lee [lee^2 le^3] means "reason" and $\mathbf{l\hat{i}}$ laccine [lee^2 $l\tilde{a}k^2$] means "vivacious."

The vowels, ă and â

II. VOWEL ACCENT MARKS

There are three vowel accent marks used in the spelling to distinguish one vowel from another. The first one is called *breve* ($\check{}$), used above a (\check{a}) to indicate a brief pronunciation, as opposed to the more open pronunciation of a. The second mark is called *circumflex* ($^{\land}$), used above a and a0 (a0) to indicate a closed pronunciation, as opposed to the open pronunciation of a0 and a0, respectively. The third vowel accent marks is called *book* (a0), attached to the top right of a0 (a0) and a0

 (\mathbf{w}) to indicate the central position of the vowels (as opposed to the back pronunciation of \mathbf{o} and **u**, respectively).

AUDIO 3

Vowel distinction. Listen to the following different vowels marked by the corresponding vowel accent marks:

- 1. **vang** $[vang^1]$ "resounding" **văng** $[văng^1]$ "to be thrown" **vâng** $[vung^1]$ "yes"
- 2. **sen** [$shen^1$] "lotus" **sên** [$shehn^1$] "snail"
- 3. **to** $\lceil tah^1 \rceil$ "big" **tô** $\lceil toh^1 \rceil$ "bowl" **to** $\lceil tuh^1 \rceil$ "silk"
- 4. **thu** $\lceil thoo^1 \rceil$ "autumn" **thw** $\lceil th\breve{u}^1 \rceil$ "letter"

NOTE

The three vowel accent marks can co-exist with the tone marks (to be covered in Chapter 5) on a vowel letter. For example, the word $v\check{a}ng [v\check{a}ng^2]$ "to be absent" contains the breve on the letter a that indicates a short pronunciation and the acute mark that indicates the high-rising tone; the word $\mathbf{t\tilde{o}}$ [toh^4] "nest" contains the circumflex on the letter \mathbf{o} that indicates a closed pronunciation of the vowel and the hook-above mark that indicates the low-rising tone.

III. PRACTICE

AUDIO 4

A. Recognizing vowels

Listen to the following sets of words and put a letter in the provided brackets corresponding to each vowel you hear.

	[a] A	$\mathbf{A} - [\mathbf{b}] \mathbf{\check{A}} - [\mathbf{c}] \mathbf{\hat{A}}$	[:	$\mathbf{a} 0 - [\mathbf{b}] \mathbf{\hat{0}} - [\mathbf{c}] 0'$		$[a] \mathbf{I} - [b] \mathbf{\hat{E}}$	
1.	[] "orange"	9. [] "steam rice"	17.	[] "heart"	
2.	[] "to weigh"	10. [] "child"	18.	[] "canal"	
3.	[] "to stretch"	11. [] "curved"	19.	[] "to be b	orn"
4.	[] "soup"	12. [] "peacock"	20.	[] "to defe	nd"

AUDIO 5

B. Using vowel accent marks

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and write a breve (`), a circumflex (^) or a hook (') above or attached to the relevant vowel where necessary:

- 1. nam "south"
- 2. nam "five"
- 3. tam "toothpick"
- 4. mam "tray"
- 5. cam "mute"
- 6. kem "cream"
- 7. them "to add"
- 8. nen "should"
- 9. dong "crowded"
- 10. tom "shrimp"
- 11. ong "bee"
- 12. **son** "to paint"
- 13. hu "broken"
- 14. **xu** "coin"
- 15. **tu** "private"

AUDIO 6

C. Professions

Listen to the following dialogue and practice it with a partner, replacing the professions accordingly:

A Xin lỗi, cô làm nghề gì?

seen¹ lohy³ koh¹ lam⁵ ngeh⁵ yee⁵ Excuse me, Miss, what is your profession?

Tôi là giáo sư. Còn anh thì sao?

 $tohy^1 la^{5} yaw^{2} shŭ^1 kahn^5 ănh^1 thee^5 shaw^1$ I am a professor. How about you?

A Tôi là công nhân.

tohy¹ la⁵ kohngm¹ nhun¹ I am a worker.



AUDIO 7

D. Description of people

Listen to the following dialogue and practice it with a partner, replacing the descriptive adjectives with your own.





A Ba của chị là như thế nào?

ba¹ koouh⁴ chee6 la5 nhŭ¹ theh² naw5 What is your father like?

B Ba tôi cao, thông minh và vui tính.

ba¹ tohy¹ kaw¹ thohngm¹ meenh¹ va⁵ vooy¹ teenh² My father is tall, smart and funny.

A Còn chị là như thế nào?

 $kahn^5$ chee⁶ la^5 $nh\ddot{u}^1$ theh² naw^5 And you, what are you like?

B Tôi thì hơi gầy, kiên nhẫn và lạc quan.

tohy¹ thee⁵ huhy¹ gay⁵ kyehn¹ nhun³ va⁵ lak6 kwan¹ I am kind of skinny, patient and optimistic.

IV. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

A. Possessive case

Vietnamese does not have possessive adjectives. To express possession, the preposition của $\lceil koouh^4 \rceil$ ("of") is used.

```
ba của tôi [ba^1 koouh^4 tohy^1] "father of me" = my father
thầy của chị [thay^5 koouh^4 chee^6] "teacher of you" = your teacher
```

In many cases, especially in the spoken language, the preposition **của** is omitted:

```
me \emptyset tôi [me^6 tohy<sup>1</sup>] "my mother"
ban Ø anh [ban<sup>6</sup> ănh<sup>1</sup>] "your friend"
```

B. Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns in Vietnamese are not "true" pronouns. They are actually derived from nouns and used for the purpose.

	Pronoun	Source	English	Usage
1st person	tôi [tohy ¹]	"servant"	I	neutral
	anh $[\check{a}nh^1]$	"older brother"	you	male of the same age or slightly older
	chị [chee ⁶]	"older sister"	you	female of the same age or slightly older
2nd person	$\mathbf{c\hat{o}}$ [koh^1]	"aunt"	you	female, younger, same age or older
	ông [ohngm¹]	"grandfather"	you	male, same age or older, with respect
	bà [<i>ba</i> ⁵]	"grandmother"	you	female, same age or older, with respect

Second-person personal pronouns are included in a greeting as an indication of politeness or respect:

Chào anh! [
$$chaw^5 \, \check{a}nh^1$$
] "Hello, brother." **Chào bà!** [$chaw^5 \, ba^5$] "Hello, ma'am."

The demonstrative adjective $\hat{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{y} \left[ay^2 \right]$ ("that") is added to a second person pronoun to turn it into a third-person pronoun:

	Pronoun	English	Usage
	anh ấy $[\check{a}nh^1 ay^2]$	he	male of the same age or slightly older
	chị ấy [chee ⁶ ay ²]	she	female of the same age or slightly older
3rd person	$\mathbf{c\hat{o}} \ \mathbf{\tilde{a}y} \ [koh^1 \ ay^2]$	she	female, younger, same age or older
	ông ấy $[ohngm^1 ay^2]$	he	male, same age or older, with respect
	bà ấy $[ba^5 ay^2]$	she	female, same age or older, with respect

Personal pronouns in the plural form are formed with a *plural marker*. **Chúng** [*choongm*²] is used for the first-person pronoun, and $\mathbf{c\acute{ac}} \left[kak^2 \right]$ is used for the second- and third-person pronouns:

	Pronoun	English	Usage
1 - 6	chúng tôi [choongm² tohy¹]	we	exclusive (excluding the listener(s))
1st person	chúng ta [choongm² ta¹]	we	inclusive (speakers and listener(s))
	các anh [kak² ănh¹]	you all	male, same age or slightly older
	các chị [kak² chee ⁶]	you all	female, same age or slightly older
2nd person	$\mathbf{c\acute{a}c}\ \mathbf{c\^{o}}\ [kak^2\ koh^1]$	you all	female, younger, same age or older
	các ông [kak² ohngm¹]	you all	male, same age or older, with respect
	các bà $[kak^2 ba^5]$	you all	female, same age or older, with respect
	các anh ấy $[kak^2 \check{a}nh^1 ay^2]$	they	male, the same age or slightly older
	các chị ấy [kak² chee ⁶ ay²]	they	female, same age or slightly older
3nd person	các cô ấy $[kak^2 koh^1 ay^2]$	they	female, younger, same age or older
	các ông ấy $[kak^2 ohngm^1 ay^2]$	they	male, same age or older, with respect
	các bà ấy $[kak^2 ba^5 ay^2]$	they	female, same age or older, with respect

The third-person pronoun $\mathbf{n}\acute{\mathbf{o}}$ is used to refer to objects, kids or anyone for whom the speaker has no respect (thus to be avoided in most cases).

Đây là xe của tôi. Nó màu xanh.

 $day^1 la^5 se^1 koouh^4 \overline{tohy^1} - nah^2 m \overline{a} w^5 x \overline{a} nh^1$ "This is my car. It is blue."

Con trai của cô đâu? Nó ở đằng kia.

 $kahn^1 trie^1 koouh^4 koh^{\overline{1}} dohw^1 - nah^2 uh^4 dăng^5 keeuh^1$ "Where is your son?" "He is over there."

Chúng nó [$choongm^2 nah^2$] is the plural form of **nó**. Its use to refer to things, however, is rare, both in speaking and writing. Speakers usually omit it in a clear context and writers simply repeat the noun previously mentioned, adding a demonstrative or possessive adjective to it.

Sách của em đâu? Chúng nó ở trên bàn.

 $sh\ ach^2 koohuh^4 em^1 \overline{dohw^1 - choongm^2 nah^2 uh^4 trehn^1 ban^5}$ "Where are your books?" "They're on the table."

Việt và Nam đâu? Chúng nó ở trong nhà.

vyeht⁶ va⁵ nam¹ dohw¹ – choongm² nah² uh⁵ trahngm¹ nha⁵ "Where are Viet and Nam?" "They're inside."

Ho $[hah^5]$ is used to mean "they" for males and females combined, referring to adults only:

Hưng và Lan là ban tôi. Ho là sinh viên.

 $h u n g^1 v a^5 la n^1 la^5 ba n^5 to h v^1 - ha h^6 la^5 sheen h^1 vyeh n^1$ "Hung and Lan are my friends. They are students."

C. Construction with a linking verb

Là $[la^5]$ and **thì** $[thee^5]$ are two linking verbs both equivalent to the English "to be." **Là** is used when followed by a noun or an adjective.

Subject + LÀ + Subject complement (Noun/Adjective)

Chi ấy là luật sư.

chee⁶ $a^{\sqrt{2}}$ la^5 $lwut^6$ shŭ¹ "She is a lawyer."

Vấn đề này là quan trong.

vun² deh⁵ năy⁵ la⁵ kwan¹ trahngm6 "This issue is important."

In spoken Vietnamese, the verb "to be" followed by an adjective is usually omitted. When the adjective is emphasized or in contrast with that of another subject, the form **thì** is used:

Tôi Ø rất lac quan.

 $tohy^{\overline{1}}rut^2 lak^6 kwan^1$ "I am very optimistic."

Mẹ tôi Ø vui tính, còn ba tôi thì nghiêm khắc.

 $me^6 toh_y^{-1} vooy^1 tinh^2 kahn^5 ba^{-1} toh_y^1 thee^5 ngyehm^1 khăk^1$ "My mother is funny, and my father is austere."

Cô thì lúc nào cũng kiên nhẫn.

koh¹ thee⁵ lookp² nahw⁵ kungm³ kyehn¹ nhun³ "You are always patient."

D. The interrogative word THÉ NÀO

Equivalent to the English "how," **thế nào** [theh² naw⁵] is used at the end of specific questions (unlike in English, where wh-words appear at the beginning of questions). This interrogative word is used to mean both "how" and "what (to be) like" in English.

Hôm nay các cô thế nào?

hohm¹ năy¹ kak² koh¹ theh² naw⁵ "How are you doing today?"

Me của em là như thế nào?

me⁶ koouh⁴ em¹ la⁵ nhŭ¹ theh² naw⁵ "What is your mother like?"

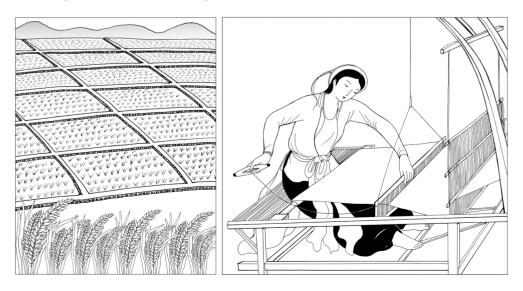
V. PROVERB



RUÔNG BỀ BỀ KHÔNG BẰNG MỘT NGHỀ TRONG TAY.

rwohng⁶ beh⁵ beh⁵ khohngm¹ băng⁵ moht⁶ ngeh⁵ trahngm¹ tăy¹

- Literal meaning: Owning a large number of rice fields cannot be compared with having a profession.
- **Figurative meaning:** It is better to be skilled than to be rich.
- **Cultural implication:** The proverb reflects an old conception in an agricultural country where wealth was based on land ownership. However, people still believed that there was more security in having a skill than just owning property.



VI. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TÙ' - NOUNS

ba $\lceil ba^1 \rceil$ father **bác sĩ** [bak² shee³] doctor **công nhân** [kohngm¹ nhun¹] worker **doanh nhân** [ywănh¹ nhun¹] businessman giáo sw [yaw² shŭ¹] professor **giáo viên** [yaw² vyehn¹] teacher **hoc sinh** [hahkp⁶ sheenh¹] student, pupil $\mathbf{k}\tilde{\mathbf{y}} \mathbf{s}\mathbf{w} \left[kee^3 sh \tilde{\mathbf{u}}^1 \right]$ engineer **luât su** [*lwut*⁶ *shŭ*¹] lawyer **me** $\lceil me^6 \rceil$ mother **nghề** [*ngeh*⁵] profession **sinh viên** [sheenh¹ vyehn¹] college student **y tá** $[ee^1 ta^2]$ nurse

ĐAI DANH TỪ - PRONOUNS

anh [ănh¹] you/male **anh ấy** $\lceil \check{a}nh^1 ay^2 \rceil$ he **bà** [ba⁵] you/female **các anh** [*kak*² *ănh*¹] you/male/plural **các anh ấy** $[kak^2 \, \check{a}nh^1 \, ay^2]$ they/male **các bà** [*kak*² *ba*⁵] you/female/plural **các bà ấy** $[kak^2 ba^5 ay^2]$ they/female **các chị** [kak² ba⁵] you/female/plural **các chị ấy** kak² chee⁶ ay²] they/female các ông [kak² ohngm¹] you/male/plural **các ông ấy** $[kak^2 ohngm^2 ay^2]$ they/male chi [chee⁶] you/female **chị ấy** [$chee^6 ay^2$] she **chúng nó** [*choongm*² *nah*²] they/objects/kids **chúng tôi** [choongm² tohy¹] we **cô** [koh¹] you/female **cô ấy** $\lceil koh^1 ay^2 \rceil$ she **ho** [hah⁶] they/unisex/adult **nó** $\lceil nah^2 \rceil$ it **ông** [ohngm¹] you/male

TÍNH TỪ - ADJECTIVES

bi quan [bee¹ kwan¹] pessimistic **cao** [kaw¹] tall **gầy** $[gay^5]$ skinny **kiên nhẫn** [*kyehn*¹ *nhun*³] patient **lac quan** $[lak^6 kwan^1]$ optimistic **siêng năng** [*shyehng*¹ *năng*¹] hard-working **thấp** [thup²] short (person) **thông minh** [thohngm¹ meenh¹] smart **vui tính** [*vooy*¹ *teenh*²] funny

ĐÔNG TỪ - VERBS

là $\lceil la^5 \rceil$ to be $lam [lam^5]$ to do, to make **thì** $[thee^5]$ to be

TRANG TÙ - ADVERBS

hơi $[huhy^1]$ kind of **rất** $\lceil rut^2 \rceil$ very

LIÊN TỪ – CONJUNCTIONS

còn $\lceil kahn^5 \rceil$ and; as for **nhưng** [những¹] but $\mathbf{v}\mathbf{\hat{a}} [va^5]$ and

THÀNH NGỮ – EXPRESSIONS

anh ấy như thế nào?

 $[\breve{a}nh^1 ay^2 nh\breve{u}^1 theh^2 naw^5]$ what is he like? còn anh thì sao?

 $\lceil kahn^5 \, \check{a}nh^1 \, thee^5 \, shaw^1 \rceil$ how about you?

dạo này cô thế nào?

 $[yaw^6 n \ddot{a} y^5 koh^1 theh^2 naw^5]$ how have you been?

xin lỗi [seen¹ lohy³] pardon; excuse me

tôi [tohy¹] I

CHAPTER 3

Semi-Vowels, Diphthongs and Triphthongs

Identifying Objects



I. SEMI-VOWELS

A semi-vowel, also called a *glide* or *approximant*, is a vowel sound partially pronounced when it comes before or after a full vowel in one syllable. There are four semi-vowels in Vietnamese.

AUDIO 1

Semi-vowel Distinction. Listen and try to discern the semi-vowels in the following words:

Spelling	Pronunciation	Example
a	like a in "again"	mư \mathbf{a} [$m\ddot{\mathbf{u}}uh^1$] "rain," cu \mathbf{a} [$koouh^1$] "crab"
i, y	like y in "you"	t i ên [$tyehn^1$] "fairy," ta i [tie^1] "ear," ta \mathbf{y} [$treve{a}y^1$] "hand"
u	like 00 , unrounded	t ư ơi [<i>tŭuhy¹</i>] "fresh," h ư ơu [<i>hŭuhw¹</i>] "stag"
o, u	like w in "how"	ca \mathbf{o} [kaw^1] "tall," h \mathbf{o} a [hwa^1] "flower," ma \mathbf{u} [$m\breve{a}w^1$] "fast," q \mathbf{u} a
		[kwa ¹] "to pass"

As shown in the examples above, semi-vowels are different from vowels only phonetically, but are still represented by regular vowel letters in the spelling.

II. DIPHTHONGS

A diphthong is a syllable that consists of a full vowel and a semi-vowel (either before or after it). Vietnamese has 27 diphthongs. Diphthongs that end with a vowel (i.e., semi-vowel + vowel) are found in closed syllables (i.e., diphthong + consonant). Diphthongs that end with a semi-vowel (i.e., vowel + semi-vowel) can be found in both open and closed syllables.

AUDIO 2

Diphthongs. Listen to the diphthongs contained in the following example words:

Spelling	Pronunciation	Example
ai	like $oldsymbol{y}$ in "my"	h ai $[hie^1]$ "two," m ai $[mie^1]$ "tomorrow"
ao	like ow in "now"	s ao [shaw ¹] "star," b ao [baw ¹] "bag"
ay	like i in "write"	bay $[b \breve{a} y^1]$ "to fly," may $[m \breve{a} y^1]$ "to sew"
au	like ou in "clout"	s au [shăw¹] "after," đ au [dăw¹] "painful"
ây	like a in "bake"	$c\mathbf{\hat{a}y}[kay^1]$ "tree," $l\mathbf{\hat{a}y}[lay^1]$ "contagious"
âu	like ow in "show"	$d\hat{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{u} [dohw^1]$ "where," $n\hat{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{u} [nohw^1]$ "brown"
eo	like ${f e}$ in "pen" followed by ${f w}$	leo [lew^1] "to climb," neo [new^1] "anchor"
êu	like ew in "ew!"	$k\hat{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{u} [kehw^1]$ "to call," $[rehw^1]$ r $\hat{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{u}$ "moss"
ia	like e in "here"	kia [$keeuh^1$] "over there," tia [$teeuh^1$] "ray"
iê, yê	like ye in "yet"	v iê m [vyehm ¹] "inflamed," yê n [yehn ¹] "peaceful"
iu	like ue in "cue"	x íu [$seew^2$] "tiny," n íu [$neew^2$] "to cling"
oi	like 0i in "hoist"	c oi $[koy^1]$ "to watch," v oi $[voy^1]$ "elephant"
ôi	like 0i, 0 pronounced closed	x ôi $[sohy^1]$ "sticky rice," n ôi $[nohy^1]$ "cradle"
οi	like ${f a}$ in "again," followed by ${f y}$	n oi $[nuhy^1]$ "place," b oi $[buhy^1]$ "to swim"
ua	like u in "sure"	c ua $[koouh^1]$ "crab," m ua $[moouh^1]$ "to buy"
oa, ua	like wa in "watt"	l oa [lwa¹] "loudspeaker," q ua [kwa¹] "to pass"
oă, uă	like wa, a pronounced shorter	xo ăn [$swăn^1$]"curly," q uă ng [$kwăng^1$] "to throw"
uâ	like ua in "kumquat"	x u \hat{a} n [$swun^1$] "spring," q u \hat{a} n [$kwun^1$] "soldier"
oe, ue	like we in "wet"	kh oe $[khwe^1]$ " to boast," q ue n $[kwen^1]$ "familiar"
uê	like we in "way"	th uê $[thweh^1]$ "to rent," q uê $[kweh^1]$ "rural"
uy	like wee in "weed"	s uy [$shwee^1$] "to decline," q uỳ [$kwee^5$] "kneel"
ui	like ${f u}$ in "thru," followed by ${f y}$	x ui [sooy ¹] "unlucky," v ui [vooy ¹] "happy"
uô	like w followed by a closed o	l uô n [$lwohn^1$] "always," b uộ c [$bwok^6$] "to tie"
uo	like w followed by a in "again"	th $\mathbf{u}\dot{\mathbf{\sigma}}$ [thwuh ⁴] "period," q $\mathbf{u}\mathbf{\sigma}$ [kwuh ¹] "to wave"
wa, wo	like u in "thru," unrounded, followed by a in "again"	c wa $[k\breve{u}uh^1]$ "to saw," l wo n $[l\breve{u}uhn^1]$ "eel"
uri	like u in "thru," unrounded, followed by y	ng ửi [ng й y^4] "to smell," с ửi [k й y^4] "loom"
uu	like u in "thru," unrounded, followed by w	h wu $[h\check{u}w^1]$ "retirement," l wu $[l\check{u}w^1]$ "to keep"

NOTES ON DIPHTHONGS

Pronunciation

The descriptions of pronunciation with English equivalents are only approximate. Careful listening to the audio material is strongly recommended.

The Letter A

The letter **a** represents a short vowel when followed by \mathbf{y} (hay, tay) or \mathbf{u} (lau, cau).

The Spellings IÊ and YÊ

The spelling **ie** is used when preceded by a consonant letter (*ti***e***n*, *hi***e***n*). When it begins a word, the spelling $\mathbf{v}\hat{\mathbf{e}}$ is used ($\mathbf{v}\hat{\mathbf{e}}n$, $\mathbf{v}\hat{\mathbf{e}}t$).

The Semi-vowel U

The semi-vowel from **u** is spelled as **u** when preceded by a **q** (qua, quan, quen) or before the letter **â** (*luân*, *cuân*, *khuân*). In other cases, it is spelled with an **o** (*loan*, *khoăn*, *khoe*).

The Letters Y and I

The letter **y** is used to represent the full vowel in the combination **uy**; the letter i is used to represent the semi-vowel in the combination **ui**.

On-glides

Diphthongs formed with a semi-vowel followed by a full vowel are also known as *on-glides*. These diphthongs belong to two groups, the first group consists of the ones that are always found in closed syllables (i.e. with a final consonant), and the second group consists of the ones found in both open and closed syllables.

1. On-glide diphthongs always found in closed syllables:

iê, yê	v iê m [<i>vyehm</i> ¹] "inflamed," yê n [<i>yehn</i> ¹] "peaceful"
oă, uă	$\mathbf{xo\check{a}}$ n [$\mathit{sw\check{a}n^1}$] "curly," $qu\check{a}$ ng [$\mathit{kw\check{a}ng^1}$] "to throw"
uâ	x uâ n [swun ¹] "spring," q uâ n [kwun ¹] "soldier"
uô	l uô n [lwohn ¹] "always," n uô ng [nwohng ¹] "to pamper"
иo	$\mathbf{x}\mathbf{w}\mathbf{o}$ ng $[\mathbf{s}\mathbf{\ddot{u}}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{h}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{g}^{1}]$ "bonne," $\mathbf{w}\mathbf{\acute{o}}$ t $[\mathbf{\ddot{u}}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{h}\mathbf{t}^{2}]$ "wet"

2. On-glide diphthongs found in both open and closed syllables:

oa, ua	$hoa [hwa^1]$ "flower," $loan [lwan^1]$ "phoenix," $qua [kwa^1]$ "to pass," qua
	[kwan²] "kiosk"
oe, ue	kh oe [khwe ¹] "boast," kh oe n [khwen ¹] "ring," q ue [kwe ¹] "stick," q ue n
	$[kwen^1]$ "familiar"
uê	th uê $[thweh^1]$ "to rent," q uê n $[kwehn^1]$ "to forget"
uy	s uy [shwee ¹] "to decline," kh uy nh [khweenh ¹] "inclined"
uo	th $\mathbf{u}\dot{\mathbf{o}}$ [thwuh ⁴] "period," h $\mathbf{u}\tilde{\mathbf{o}}$ n [hwuhn ³] "idle"

Off-glides

Diphthongs formed with a full vowel followed by a semi-vowel are also known as off-glides. All the off-glide diphthongs are found only in open syllables.

III. TRIPHTHONGS

A triphthong is a syllable that consists of a full vowel and two glides. There are 13 triphthongs in Vietnamese.

AUDIO 3

Triphthongs. Listen to discern the triphthongs in the following example words:

Spelling	Pronunciation	Example
yêu, iêu	like \mathbf{yie} in "yield," followed by \mathbf{w}	yêu [yehw ¹] "love," h iểu [hyehw ⁴]
yeu, ieu		"understand"
uôi	like w followed by closed \mathbf{o} and \mathbf{y}	đ uôi [$dwohy^1$] "tail," ng uôi [$ngwohy^1$] "to
		subside"
woi	unrounded u followed by a in	t ươi [<i>tŭuhy</i> ¹] "fresh," с ười [<i>kŭuhy</i> ⁵] "to laugh"
	"again" and $oldsymbol{y}$	
wou	unrounded u followed by a in	h ươu [hŭuhw¹] "stag," r ượu [rŭuhw ⁶]
	"again" and w	"alcohol"
uya	like \mathbf{wi} in "with," followed by \mathbf{a} in	kh uya [<i>khweeuh</i> ¹] "late at night"
	"again"	
uyu	like \mathbf{wi} in "with" followed by \mathbf{w}	kh uỷu [<i>khweew</i> ⁴] "elbow"
oai, uai	like wi in "wide"	kh oai [khwie¹] "yam," q uai [kwie¹] "strap"
oay, uay	like ui in "quite"	x oáy $[sw\Bar{a}y^1]$ "to whirl," q uay $[kw\Bar{a}y^1]$ "to spin"
uây	like uai in "quail"	kh uây [khway¹] "solace," q uây [kway¹]
		"enclose"
uao	like wow	q uào [kwaw ⁵] "to scratch"
uau	like wow with shorter o	q uạu [<i>kwăw</i> ⁶] "sullen"
oeo, ueo	like \mathbf{we} in "wet," followed by \mathbf{w}	ng oeo [$ngwew^6$] "to tilt," q ueo [$kwew^6$]
		"to turn"
uyê	like wi in "with," followed by e in	x uyê n[swyehn ¹] "through," q uyế n [kwyehn ⁵]
	"yet"	"right"

NOTES ON TRIPHTHONGS

Semi-vowels and Spelling

The alternation between \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{y} for the semi-vowel coming from \mathbf{i} and between \mathbf{o} and \mathbf{u} for the semi-vowel coming from \mathbf{u} applied to the spelling of diphthongs also applies to the spelling of triphthongs.

Semi-vowels, Full Vowels and Spelling

The choice between the letters \mathbf{i} and \mathbf{v} to represent a semi-vowel and a full vowel, respectively, applied to the spelling of diphthongs also applies to the spelling of triphthongs.

Open Syllables

All triphthongs but **uyê** are found in open syllables (i.e. without a final consonant).

Formations

All but one triphthongs have the formation Glide + Vowel + Glide. **uvê** is the only triphthong that has the formation Glide + Glide + Vowel.

Rare Tripthongs

Some of the triphthongs are rare, appearing only in a small number of words in the whole language, such as **uao/oao**, **uau**, **uya** and **uou**.

IV. PRACTICE

AUDIO 4

A. Diphthongs in contrast

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and repeat after the speaker.

- **suu** [shŭw¹] "fee" **sâu** [shohw¹] "deep" 1.
- **sui** [shooy¹] "in-law" **suy** [shwee¹] "to decline" 2.
- $\mathbf{quy} [kwee^1]$ "rule" $\mathbf{que} [kweh^1]$ "rural" $\mathbf{quo} [kwuh^1]$ "to wave" 3.
- **cao** $\lceil kaw^1 \rceil$ "tall" **cau** $\lceil k\breve{a}w^1 \rceil$ "areca nut" **câu** $\lceil kohw^1 \rceil$ "sentence" 4.
- **cua** $\lceil koouh^1 \rceil$ "crab" **cua** $\lceil k uh^1 \rceil$ "to saw" **kia** $\lceil keeuh^1 \rceil$ "over there" 5.
- **luôn** [*lwohn*¹] "always" **lươn** [*lŭuhn*¹] "eel" **luân** [*lwun*¹] "rotation" 6.
- $tai [tie^1]$ "ear" $tay [tay^1]$ "hand" $tay [tay^1]$ "west" $toi [tuhy^1]$ "ragged" 7.
- **theo** [thew¹] "to follow" **thêu** [thwehw¹] "to embroider" **thiu** [theew¹] "stale" 8.
- **khoan** $\lceil khwan^1 \rceil$ "to drill" **khuân** $\lceil khwun^1 \rceil$ "to carry" **khoắng** $\lceil khwăng^2 \rceil$ "to stir" 9.
- 10. **voi** $\lceil voy^1 \rceil$ "elephant" **vôi** $\lceil vohy^1 \rceil$ "lime" **voi** $\lceil vuhy^1 \rceil$ "empty" $\lceil vooy^1 \rceil$ **vui** "happy"
- 11. $\mathbf{xay} \left[s \breve{a} y^1 \right]$ "to grind" $\mathbf{xay} \left[s a y^1 \right]$ "to build" $\mathbf{xa} \mathbf{\hat{o}i} \left[x o h y^1 \right]$ "sticky rice" $\mathbf{xo} \mathbf{i} \left[s u h y^1 \right]$
- 12. **chia** $[cheeuh^1]$ "to divide" **chiên** $[chyehn^1]$ "to fry" **chua** $[choouh^1]$ "sour" **chua** [chŭuh¹] "not yet"
- 13. **khoe** $\lceil khwe^1 \rceil$ "to show off" **khuê** $\lceil khweh^1 \rceil$ "lady bedroom" **khuy** $\lceil khwee^1 \rceil$ "button-hole"

B. Triphthongs in contrast

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and repeat after the speaker.

- 1. **khuya** [*khweeuh*¹] "late at night" – **khuyên** [*khwyehn*¹] "to advise"
- 2. **quai** $\lceil kwie^1 \rceil$ "strap" – **quay** $\lceil kway^1 \rceil$ "to spin" – **quây** $\lceil kway^1 \rceil$ "to enclose"
- 3. niêu [nyehw¹] "cooking pot" – hươu [hŭuhw¹] "stag" – khuỷu [khweew⁴] "elbow"
- **khuỷu** [khweew⁴] "elbow" **kiểu** [kyehw⁴] "model" **khuyển** [khwyehn⁴] "canine" 4.
- **quào** [kwaw⁵] "to scratch" **quạu** [kwăw⁶] "sullen" **quẹo** [kwew⁶] "to turn" 5.

AUDIO 6

C. Diphthongs and triphthongs in contrast

Listen to the pronunciation of the following word pairs and repeat after the speaker.

	Diphthong	Triphthong
1	cai $[kie^1]$ "to give up"	quai [kwie ¹] "strap"
2	$\mathbf{cay}\left[k y^1\right]$ "spicy"	quay $[k w \breve{a} y^1]$ "to spin"
3	$\mathbf{cay}[kay^1]$ "tree"	$\mathbf{quây} [kway^1]$ "to enclose"
4	$\mathbf{c\grave{ao}}\ [kaw^5]$ "to rake"	quào [kwaw ⁵] "to scratch"
5	cáu [kăw²] "angry"	quạu [<i>kwăw</i> ⁶] "sullen"
6	keo [kew^6] "candy"	queo [kwew ⁶] "to turn"
7	thiu [theew¹] "stale"	thiêu [thyehw¹] "to cremate"
8	kêu [kehw¹] "to call"	kiêu [kyehw¹] "arrogant"
9	cửi [kŭy ⁴] "loom"	cưỡi [kŭuhy³] "to ride"
10	hwu $[h\breve{u}w^1]$ "retirement"	hươu [hŭuhw¹] "stag"
11	nghèo [ngew ⁵] "poor"	ngoeo [ngwew ⁶] "to twist"
12	ngao [ngaw¹] "oyster"	ngoao [ngwaw ¹] "meow"
13	nghiên [ngyehn ¹] "inkwell"	nguyên [ngwyehn ¹] "whole"
14	kia [$keeuh^1$] "over there"	khuya [khweeuh ¹] "late at night"
15	quên [kwehn1] "to forget"	quyên [kwyehn ¹] "swamp-hen"
16	cúi $[kooy^2]$ "to bow"	cuối [kwooy²] "end"
17	tới [<i>tuhy</i> ²] "to arrive"	tưới [<i>tŭuhy</i> ²] "to water"
18	đui [dooy¹] "blind"	đuôi [dwooy¹] "tail"

D. Objects and colors

Listen to the following sentences and recognize the pronunciation of the diphthongs and triphthongs in the words that contain them (shown in boldface).



- 1. Cái bàn này là màu gì? kie² ban⁵ năy⁵ la⁵ măw⁵ yee⁵ What color is this table?
- Cái q**uầ**n đó là m**àu** xanh lục. 2. kie² kwun⁵ dah² la⁵ măw⁵ sănh¹ lookp6 Those pants are green.
- Con mèo kia là màu xám. 3. kahn¹ mew⁵ keeuh¹ la⁵ măw⁵ sam² That cat over there is gray.
- Tr**ái** b**ưởi** này là màu vàng. 4. $trie^2 b \ddot{u}uhy^4 n \ddot{a}y^5 la^5 m \ddot{a}w^5 vang^5$ This grapefruit is yellow.
- 5. Chiếc thuyền đó là màu đỏ. chyehk² thwyehn5 dah² la5 măw5 dah4 That boat is red.
- Căn nhà kia là màu trắng. 6. kăn¹ nha⁵ keeuh¹ la⁵ măw⁵ trăng² That house over there is white.

7. Cây viết chì này là màu đen. kay¹ vyeht² chee⁵ năy⁵ la⁵ măw⁵ den¹ This pencil is black.

Ngôi chùa đó là màu hồng. 8. ngohy¹ choouh⁵ dah² la⁵ măw⁵ hohngm⁵ That temple is pink.

9. Quyển sách đó là màu tím. kwyehn⁴ shăch² dah² la⁵ măw⁵ teem² That book is purple.

10. Cuốn từ điển kia là màu xanh dương. kwohn² tŭ⁵ dyehn⁴ keeuh¹ la⁵ măw⁵ sănh¹ yŭuhng¹ That dictionary over there is blue.

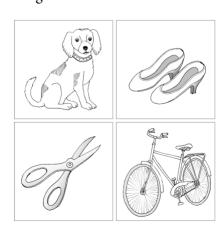
11. Vi**ê**n k**eo** này là m**àu** cam. vyehn¹ kew⁶ năy⁵ la⁵ măw⁵ kam¹ This piece of candy is orange.

12. Cây táo đó là màu nâu. kay¹ taw² dah² la⁵ măw⁵ nohw¹ That apple tree is brown.

AUDIO 8

E. Objects and possession

Listen to the following sentences and repeat after the speaker. Underline the words that contain a diphthong or a triphthong.



- 1. Quyển vở này là của ai? kwyehn⁴ vuh⁴ năy⁵ la⁵ koouh⁴ ie¹ Whose book is this?
- 2. Con chó đó là của ba tôi. kahn¹ chah² dah² la⁵ koouh⁴ ba¹ tohy¹ That dog is my father's.
- 3. Đôi giày kia là của mẹ tôi. dohy¹ yăy⁵ keeuh¹ la⁵ koouh⁴ me⁶ tohy¹ That pair of shoes is my mother's.
- 4. Chiếc vớ này không phải là của tôi. chyehk² vuh² năy⁵ khohngm¹ fie⁴ la⁵ koouh⁴ tohy¹ This sock is not mine.
- 5. Cái quần này là của anh, phải không? kie² kwun⁵ năy⁵ la⁵ koouh⁴ ănh¹ fie⁴ khohngm¹ This pair of pants is yours, isn't it?
- 6. Cái kéo kia không phải là của chúng tôi. kie² kew² keeuh¹ khohngm¹ fie⁴ la⁵ koouh⁴ choongm² tohy¹ That pair of scissors over there is not ours.
- 7. Con dao đó là của anh ấy hay của cô ấy? $kahn^1 yaw^1 dah^2 la^5 koouh^4 anh^1 ay^2 hay^1 koouh^4 koh^1 ay^2$ Is that knife his or hers?
- 8. Trái banh này có phải là của các anh không? trie² bănh¹ năy⁵ kah² fie⁴ la⁵ koouh⁴ kak² ănh¹ khohngm¹ Is this ball yours?
- 9. Chiếc xe đạp kia là của Nam. chyehk² se¹ dap⁶ keeuh¹ la⁵ koouh⁴ nam¹ That bicycle over there is Nam's.
- 10. Toà nhà này là của bà Lan. twa⁵ nha⁵ năy⁵ la⁵ koouh⁴ ba⁵ lan¹ This mansion is Mrs. Lan's.

F. Writing sentences

Refer to the Notes on Grammar and the Active Vocabulary sections to do this exercise. Write sentences in Vietnamese based on the suggestions in English.

1.	What is the color of your (female/singular) car?
2.	This orange is not mine.
3.	Is that cat yours (male/singular)?
4.	Whose watch is this?
5.	Those eyeglasses are hers, aren't they?
6.	Is that dictionary over there brown or gray?
7.	This pair of shoes is my friend's.
8.	That church is theirs (<i>mixed gender</i>).

V. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

A. Classifiers

A set of nouns is used to accompany other nouns to indicate what "class" these nouns belong to when they are referred to specifically. These nouns are called *classifiers*. The most common classifiers are the following:

cái [kie²]

Used before objects such as cái bàn [kie² ban⁵] "table," cái ghế [kie² geh²] "chair," cái áo [$kie^2 aw^2$] "shirt."

con $\lceil kahn^1 \rceil$

Used before nouns of animals: **con mèo** [kahn¹ mew⁵] "cat," **con chó** [kah¹ chah²] "dog," **con chim** [*kahn*¹ *cheem*¹] "bird." By extension, **con** is also used for some other nouns: **con** **đường** [kahn¹ dữuhng⁵] "street," **con dao** [kahn¹ yaw¹] "knife," **con tem** [kahn¹ tem¹] "stamp," **con sông** [kahn¹ shohngm¹] "river."

trái [trie²]

Used before nouns of fruit: **trái cam** [trie² kam¹] "orange," **trái chuối** [trie¹ chooy²] "banana," **trái xoài** [*trie*² *swie*⁵] "mango." By extension, **trái** is also used for things that are round: trái banh [trie² bănh¹] "ball," trái đất [trie² dut²] "earth."

chiếc [chyehk²]

Used before nouns of means of transportation: chiếc xe [chyehk² se¹] "vehicle," chiếc xe **đap** $\lceil chyehk^2 se^1 dap^6 \rceil$ "bicycle," **chiếc thuyền** $\lceil chyehk^2 thwyehn^5 \rceil$ "boat." This classifier is also used to indicate an object in a pair: **chiếc giày** [chyehk² yặy⁵] "shoe," **chiếc đũa** [chye*hk*² *doouh*³] "chopstick," **chiếc dép** [*chyehk*² *yep*²] "flip-flop."

$\hat{cay} [kay^1]$

Used before nouns of trees and plants: cây táo [kay¹ taw²] "apple tree," cây hoa lan [kay¹ hwa¹ lan¹] "orchid plant," **cây bưởi** [kay¹ bǔuhy⁴] "grapefruit tree." This classifier is also used with stick-shaped objects: **cây viết bi** [kay¹ vyeht² bee¹] "pen," **cây thước** [kay¹ thǔuhk²] "ruler," **cây gây** [kay¹ gay⁶] "cane."

căn [kăn¹]

Used for units of dwelling of small or medium sizes: $\mathbf{c}\ddot{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{h}\dot{\mathbf{a}}[k\ddot{a}n^1nha^5]$ "house," $\mathbf{c}\ddot{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{p}\mathbf{h}\dot{\mathbf{o}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{g}$ $\lceil k \ddot{a} n^1 \text{ fahngm}^5 \rceil$ "room," **căn chung cw** $\lceil k \ddot{a} n^1 \text{ choongm}^1 \text{ } k \ddot{u}^1 \rceil$ "apartment," **căn phố** $\lceil k \ddot{a} n^1 \rceil$ *foh*²] "business suite."

$\mathbf{d\hat{o}i} [dohy^1]$

The classifier $\mathbf{d\hat{o}i} \ [dohy^1]$ is used for the pair: $\mathbf{d\hat{o}i} \ \mathbf{giay} \ [dohy^1 \ y \ ay^5]$ "pair of shoes," $\mathbf{d\hat{o}i} \ \mathbf{d\tilde{u}a}$ $\lceil dohy^1 doouh^3 \rceil$ "pair of chopsticks," **đôi dép** $\lceil dohy^1 yep^2 \rceil$ "pair of flip-flops."

ngôi $\lceil ngohy^1 \rceil$

Used before units of dwelling of large sizes or religious abodes: **ngôi nhà** $[ngohy^1 nha^5]$ "big house," **ngôi đền** [ngohy¹ dehn⁵] "temple," **ngôi chùa** [ngohy¹ choouh⁵] "Buddhist temple," **ngôi nhà thờ** [ngohy¹ nha⁵ thuh⁵] "church."

toà [*twa*⁵]

Used before units of dwelling or buildings of great importance: **toà nhà** [twa⁵ nha⁵] "mansion," toà lâu đài [twa⁵ lohw¹ die⁵] "palace," toà thánh [twa⁵ thănh²] "sacred edifice."

B. Pair or no pair?

In English, objects that are referred to as a pair consist of either two separate parts (shoes, socks, earrings, etc.), or two parts that are connected (pants, scissors, tongs, eyeglasses, etc.). In Vietnamese, however, only pairs of separate parts can be considered "pairs" (**đôi đũa** [dohy¹ doouh³] "pair of chopsticks," **đôi giày** [dohy¹ yặy⁵] "pair of shoes," **đôi bông tai** [dohy¹ bohngm¹ tie¹] "pair of earrings," etc.). Objects with two connected parts considered "pairs" in English are just referred to as single items (singular nouns) in Vietnamese. Thus, "a pair of pants" is **một cái quần** [moht⁶ kie¹ kwun⁵], "a pair of scissors" is **một cái kéo** [moht⁶ kie² keenh²], "a pair of glasses" is **một cái kính** [moht⁶ kie² keenh²], etc.

C. Demonstrative adjectives

There are three demonstrative adjectives, used according to the distance between the speaker and the thing or person that he or she refers to. These adjectives appear after the noun they accompany and usually co-exist with a classifier (used before the noun) in specific reference.

Distance	Demonstrative adjective	Example
Near	này [năy ⁵]	cái bàn này "this table"
Far	đó $[dah^2]$	trái cam đó "that orange"
Very far	kia [keeuh ¹]	con mèo kia "that cat over there"

Parallel to demonstrative adjectives, there are also *demonstrative adverbs*:

Distance	Demonstrative adjective	Example
Near	$\mathbf{d\hat{a}y}\left[day^{1}\right]$	Đây là cái bàn. "Here is a table"
Far	đó $[dah^2]$	Đố là trái cam. "There is an orange"
Very far	kia [keeuh¹]	Kia là con mèo. "Over there is a cat"

Some other examples with demonstrative adverbs are:

Tôi **đây**! $[tohy^1 day^1]$ "Here I am." Ai **đó**? $[ie^1 dah^2]$ "Who's there?"

Cái gì kia? [kie² yee⁵ keeuh¹] "What's over there?"

D. Positions of determiners and adjectives in a noun phrase

When multiple determiners (classifiers, demonstratives) and adjectives (descriptive or possessive) are present in a noun phrase, the positions of those words around the noun are as shown in the following example:

[Cái bàn lớn màu xanh này của tôi] Noun Phrase là bằng gỗ.

kie² ban⁵ luhn² năy⁵ koouh⁴ tohy¹ la⁵ băng⁵ goh³ "This big green table of mine is made of wood."

Classifier + **NOUN** + descriptive adjective + color adjective + demonstrative adjective + possessive adjective

A classifier is usually used with the noun when there is a possessive phrase present, but not required:

(chiếc) xe đạp của anh ấy $[chyehk^2 se^1 dap^6 koouh^4 ănh^1 ay^2]$ "his bicycle" (căn) nhà của chúng tôi $\lceil k \breve{a} n^1 nha^5 koouh^4 choongm^2 tohy^1 \rceil$ "our house"

A descriptive adjective and a color adjective can switch places when accompanying a noun:

cây viết cũ màu đỏ ~ cây viết màu đỏ cũ "the old red pen" $kay^1 vyeht^2 kooh^3 m \ddot{a} w^5 dah^4 \sim kay^1 vyeht^2 m \ddot{a} w^5 dah^4 koo^3$

Color adjectives can be used with or without the noun **màu** ("color")

trái banh (màu) trắng "the white ball" trie² bănh¹ măw⁵ trăng² trái táo (màu) đỏ "the red apple" trie² taw² măw⁵ dah⁴

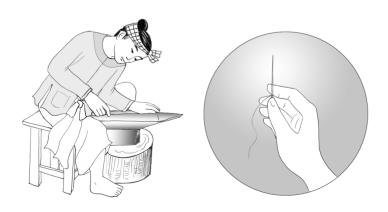
VI. PROVERB



CÓ CÔNG MÀI SẮT, CÓ NGÀY NÊN KIM.

kah² kohngm¹ mie⁵ shăt² kah² ngăy⁵ nehn¹ keem¹

- Literal meaning: If you patiently try to file a piece of iron, you will turn it into a needle one day.
- **Figurative meaning:** Perseverance is the key to success.
- **Cultural implication:** This proverb reflects an aspect of every day like in old Vietnam, when manual labor used to prevail, beside fishing and farming. It also casts Vietnamese people as patient and hard working.



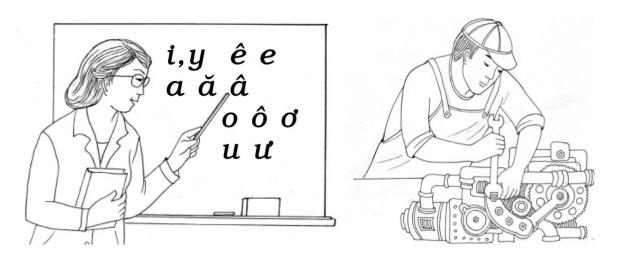
VII. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TÙ' - NOUNS TÍNH TỪ - ADIECTIVES **áo so-mi** $\lceil aw^2 shuh^1 mee^1 \rceil$ shirt **cam** [kam¹] orange **bàn** [ban⁵] table $\tilde{\mathbf{cu}} [koo^4]$ old **banh** [bănh¹] ball **đen** [den¹] black **cam** [kam¹] orange **đep** [dep⁶] beautiful **chim** [cheem¹] bird $\mathbf{do} \left[dah^4 \right] \text{ red}$ **chó** [chah²] dog $\mathbf{do} \left[dah^2 \right]$ that **chùa** [*choouh*⁵] Buddhist temple **hồng** [hohngm⁵] pink **chuối** [chwohy²] banana **kia** [*keeuh*¹] that... over there **dép** [yep²] flip-flops **lón** [luhn²] big **đền** [dehn⁵] temple **mới** $[muhy^2]$ new **đồng hồ** [dohngm⁵ hoh⁵] watch, clock **nâu** [nohw¹] brown **ghế** [*geh*²] chair **này** $\lceil n \breve{a} y^5 \rceil$ this giày [yăy⁵] shoe **nhỏ** [*nhah*⁴] small **kính** [keenh²] eyeglasses; glass tím [teem²] purple màu [*măw*⁵] color **trắng** [trăng²] white **mèo** [mew⁵] cat **vàng** [vang⁵] yellow **nhà** [nha⁵] house **xám** [sam²] gray **nhà thờ** [nha⁵ thuh⁵] church **xanh dương** [sănh¹ yŭuhng¹] blue **xanh luc** [sănh¹ lookp6] green **phòng** [fahngm⁵] room **quần** [kwun⁵] pants NGHI VẤN TỪ - INTERROGATIVE táo [taw²] apple WORDS **thuyền** [thwyehn⁵] boat ai? $[ie^1]$ who? **viết bi** [vyeht² bee¹] ball point pen cái gì? $[kie^2 yee^5]$ what? viết chì [vyeht² chee⁵] pencil **của ai?** [koouh⁴ ie¹] whose? **xe** $\operatorname{dap} [se^1 dap^6]$ bicycle **màu gì?** $[m\breve{a}w^5 yee^5]$ what color? **xe hoi** $[se^1 huhy^1]$ car $\dot{\mathbf{o}}$ **đâu** $[uh^4 dohw^1]$ where at? **xoài** [swie⁵] mango

CHAPTER 4

Consonants

Food and Drinks



I. CONSONANTS

There are 22 consonants in standard Vietnamese.

AUDIO 1

Consonants. Listen to the pronunciation of the consonants represented by the letters.

	Letter	Consonant sound	Example
1	b	like b in "boy"	\mathbf{b} a $[ba^1]$ "three," \mathbf{b} ao $[baw^1]$ "bag"
2	c, k, q	like ${f c}$ in "cat," unaspirated	c ao [kaw ¹] "tall," k em [kem ¹]"cream," q ue
			[kwe¹] "tick"
3	ch	like c h in "chair"	ch ai [<i>chie</i> ¹] "bottle," ch ua [<i>choouh</i> ¹] "sour"
4	d, gi	like y in "yes" or z in "zero"	\mathbf{d} a [ya^1] "skin," $\mathbf{g}\mathbf{i}$ á [ya^2] "price"
5	đ	like d in "do,"	\mathbf{d} au $[d\breve{a}w^1]$ "pain," \mathbf{d} i $[dee^1]$ "to go"
6	g, gh	like g in "go," soft	${f g}$ an $[gan^1]$ "liver," ${f g}$ he $[ge^1]$ "boat"
7	h	like h in "hat"	h ai [<i>hie</i> ¹] "two," h eo [<i>hew</i> ¹] "pig"
8	kh	like k in "key," aspirated	\mathbf{kh} i [$khee^4$] "monkey," \mathbf{kh} ó [$khah^2$] "difficult"
9	l	like l in "love"	lon [lahn¹] "can," ly [lee¹] "glass"
10	m	like m in "mother"	\mathbf{m} ưa $[m \ddot{u} u h^1]$ "rain," na \mathbf{m} $[n a m^1]$ "south"
11	n	like n in "name"	\mathbf{n} ai [nie^1] "deer," la \mathbf{n} [lan^1] "orchid"
12	ng, ngh	like ng in "long"	\mathbf{ng} ai $[ngie^1]$ "throne," \mathbf{ngh} e $[nge^1]$ "to hear"
13	nh	like ny in "canyon"	\mathbf{nh} anh $[nh\ddot{a}nh^1]$ "fast," \mathbf{nh} ai $[nhie^1]$ "to chew"
14	р	like p in "cap"	họ \mathbf{p} [$hahp^6$] "to meet," hẹ \mathbf{p} [hep^6] "narrow"
15	ph	like ph in "phone"	$\mathbf{phao} [faw^1]$ "buoy," $\mathbf{pha} [fa^1]$ "to brew"

	Letter	Consonant sound	Example
16	r	like r in "rice"	r au [<i>răw</i> ¹] "vegetable," r êu [<i>rehw</i> ¹] "moss"
17	S	like s in "sugar"	s ai [shie ¹] "incorrect," s âu [shohw ¹] "deep"
18	t	like t in "tea," unaspirated	$ ai [tie^1]$ "ear," $t\hat{o} [toh^1]$ "bowl"
19	th	like th in "thyme," aspirated	th u [$thoo^1$] "autumn," th ăm [th ă m^1] "to visit"
20	tr	like tr in "try"	tr ai [<i>trie</i> ¹] "boy," tr ên [<i>trehn</i> ¹] "above"
21	v	like v in "van"	v ui [<i>vooy</i> ¹] "happy," v oi [<i>voy</i> ¹] "elephant"
22	X	like s in "sun"	\mathbf{x} a [sa^1] "far," \mathbf{x} u [soo^1] "cent"

NOTES ON CONSONANT LETTERS

The Three Consonant Groups

Consonant letters (singles and two-letter or three-letter combinations) are divided into three groups, according to their positional distribution in the word structure as follows:

AUDIO 2

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and pay attention to the consonants in the initial positions and/or final positions.

	Letter	Example	
	GROUP 1 – In final position only		
1	p	bắ \mathbf{p} [$b\check{a}p^2$] "corn," bế \mathbf{p} [$behp^2$] "kitchen"	
		GROUP 2 – In initial position only	
2	b	${f b}$ ánh $[b anh^2]$ "cake," ${f b}$ í $[bee^2]$ "pumpkin"	
3	d	\mathbf{d} âu $[yohw^1]$ "strawberry," \mathbf{d} ua $[yreve{u}uh^1]$ "melon"	
4	đ	\mathbf{d} ào [daw^5] "peach," \mathbf{d} ậu [$dohw^6$] "bean"	
5	g	\mathbf{g} à $[ga^5]$ "chicken," \mathbf{g} ỏi $[goy^4]$ "salad"	
6	gh	${f gh}$ e $[ge^6]$ "crab," ${f gh}$ i $[gee^1]$ "to record"	
7	h	h eo [hew ¹] "pig," h ồng [hohngm ⁵] "pink"	
8	k	\mathbf{k} em [kem^1] "ice cream," \mathbf{k} êu [$kehw^1$] "to call"	
9	kh	kh ế [$kheh^2$] "star fruit," kh ô [$khoh^1$] "dry"	
10	l	lá $[la^2]$ "leaf," lửa $[l\ddot{u}uh^4]$ "fire"	
11	ngh	\mathbf{ngh} êu [$ngehw^1$] "clam," \mathbf{ngh} i [$ngee^1$] "to doubt"	
12	ph	ph ở [fuh ⁴] "noodles," ph ao [faw ¹] "buoy"	
13	q	${f q}$ uai $[kwie^1]$ "strap," ${f q}$ uýt $[kweet^2]$ "mandarin"	
14	r	\mathbf{r} au [$r\breve{a}w^1$] "vegetable," \mathbf{r} ửa [$r\breve{u}uh^4$] "to wash"	
15	S	s u [shoo¹] "cabbage," s ữa [shйuh³] "milk"	
16	th	th it [$theet^6$] "meat," th u [$thoo^1$] "autumn"	
17	tr	tr ên [trehn ¹] "above," tr ong [trahngm ¹] "inside"	
18	v	v ải [<i>vie</i> ⁴] "fabric," v oi [<i>voy</i> ¹] "elephant"	
19	X	\mathbf{x} a [sa^1] "far," \mathbf{x} uong [$s\breve{u}uhng^1$] "bone"	

	Letter	Example	
	GROUP 3 – In both initial and final positions		
20	С	\mathbf{c} á [ka^2] "fish," nướ \mathbf{c} [n ŭ u h k^2] "water"	
21	ch	ch áo [<i>chaw</i> ²] "porridge," thí ch [<i>theech</i> ²] "to like"	
22	m	\mathbf{m} ực [$m\breve{u}k^6$] "squid," tô \mathbf{m} [$tohm^1$] "shrimp"	
23	n	n ấu [nohw²] "to cook," ché n [chen²] "bowl"	
24	ng	\mathbf{ng} ò $[ngah^5]$ "cilantro," ma \mathbf{ng} $[mang^1]$ "to carry"	
25	nh	nh o [$nhah^1$] "grape," hà nh [$h\breve{a}nh^5$] "onion"	
26	t	\mathbf{t} ỏi $[toy^4]$ "garlic," mí \mathbf{t} $[meet^2]$ "jackfruit"	

Pronunciation

The pronunciation of consonant letters vary from dialect to dialect in Vietnamese. A detailed discussion is found in Chapter 10. The most common difference, however, is the pronunciation of the letters \mathbf{d} and \mathbf{gi} . In several northern dialects, they are pronounced like English \mathbf{z} , whereas in the central and southern dialects, they are pronounced like English y. For example, the words dao "knife" and **giao** "to deliver" are both pronounced as $[zaw^1]$ in northern dialects, and as $[yaw^1]$ in central and southern dialects. These two spellings used to have two distinct pronunciations in old Vietnamese. In modern Vietnamese, they have merged into one similar pronunciation.

AUDIO 3

Initial Consonants

Listen to the pronunciation of the initial consonant of the following words in the northern dialects (Speaker 1) and in the central and southern dialects (Speaker 2). Repeat after the speakers.

	Dialectal pronunciations of D and GI
1	dải "strip" ~ giải "award" [<i>zie</i> ⁴ ~ <i>yie</i> ⁴]
2	da "skin" ~ gia "family" $[za^1 \sim ya^1]$
3	dây "string" ~ giây "second" [$zay^1 \sim yay^1$]
4	dấu "mark" ~ giấu "to hide" [zohw² ~ yohw²]

The word-initial stop consonants \mathbf{t} and $\mathbf{c}/\mathbf{k}/\mathbf{q}$ are always pronounced unaspirated, unlike the English stop consonants in such words as "time, cat, kid, quit."

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words in Vietnamese and English to hear the contrast in aspiration of the initial consonants in the two languages.

	Vietnamese word	English word
	Unaspirated initial consonant	Aspirated initial consonant
1	tai [tie ¹] "ear"	t ie
2	coi [koy ¹] "to watch"	coy
3	kinh [$keenh^1$] "canal"	king
4	quai [kwie ¹] "strap"	q uite

Final Consonants

Final consonants in Vietnamese are *not audibly released*. For example, in such words as **hat** [hat⁶] "seed," **nước** $[n \ddot{u} u h k^2]$ "water," **hấp** $[h u p^2]$ "to steam," the final **t**, **c** and **p** are formed with the tongue blade touching the upper teeth (for t), the back of the tongue touching the soft velum (for (\mathbf{c}) and the lips closing up (for (\mathbf{p})), without being fully pronounced.

AUDIO 5

Listen to perceive the unreleased final consonants in the following words and repeat after the speaker.

- 1. **thit** [theet⁶] "meat" **bap** [bap^2] "corn" **nuớc** [$nauhk^2$] "water"
- 2. $\mathbf{m\acute{u}t} [m\breve{u}t^2]$ "candied fruit" $\mathbf{n\acute{e}p} [nehp^2]$ "sticky rice" $\mathbf{lu\acute{o}c} [lwohk^6]$ "to boil"

The Consonants B and D

The consonants \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{d} in Vietnamese are pronounced with glottal stop preceding them, creating an effect known as *implosion* (the airflow being obstructed during the pronunciation).

AUDIO 6

Initial Stop Consonants

Listen to the implosive pronunciation of the initial stop consonants in the following words and repeat after the speaker:

- 1. **b**ánh $[b\bar{a}nh^2]$ "cake" **b**ưởi $[b\bar{u}uhy^4]$ "grapefruit" **b**ột $[boht^6]$ "flour"
- 2. \mathbf{d} âu $[dohw^6]$ "bean" \mathbf{d} ường $[d\check{u}uhng^5]$ "sugar" \mathbf{d} á $[da^2]$ "stone"

The Consonant G

The consonant **g** in Vietnamese has a *fricative* pronunciation (with partial blockage of the air stream), as opposed to the *stop* pronunciation of the **g** in English (with complete blockage of the air stream).

The spellings \mathbf{g} and \mathbf{gh} represent the same sound, with \mathbf{g} used before the letters \mathbf{a} , $\tilde{\mathbf{a}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{u}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{u}}$, and **gh** used before the letters **e**, **ê**, **i**.

This spelling rule also applies to the consonant letters \mathbf{ng} (before $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$, \mathbf{o} , $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$, \mathbf{o} , \mathbf{u} , \mathbf{u}) and \mathbf{ngh} (before e, ê, i).

AUDIO 7

Pronunciation of G/GH

Listen to the fricative pronunciation of the consonant represented by \mathbf{g}/\mathbf{gh} in Vietnamese and compare it with the stop pronunciation of the English g. Repeat the Vietnamese words after the speaker.

	Vietnamese G Fricative	English G Stop
1	$\mathbf{g\hat{a}n} [gun^1]$ "tendon"	gun
2	gai [gie¹] "thorn"	guide
3	găm $[găm^1]$ "to pin"	gum
4	ghen [gen ¹] "envious"	gain
5	gông [gohngm ¹] "stocks"	gong

A as a Short Vowel

When a is followed by **nh** or **ch**, it is pronounced as a short vowel, as in the following words: chanh [chănh¹] "lemon," hành [hănh⁵] "onion," thach [thăch⁶] "jelly," sách [shāch²] "book." This short vowel is usually spelled $\breve{\mathbf{a}}$ in other contexts such as $\breve{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{n} \left[\breve{a}n^1 \right]$ "to eat," $\breve{\mathbf{m}}\breve{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{g} \left[m\breve{a}nq^1 \right]$ "bamboo shoot," **măt** $[m \breve{a} t^6]$ "face," **măc** $[m \breve{a} k^6]$ "to wear.""

AUDIO 8

Brief and Open A

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words to perceive the difference between the brevity of the vowel sound in the words in the left column and the openness of the vowel sound in the words in the right column. Repeat after the speaker.

	Short vowel	Open vowel
1	bánh [bănh²] "cake,"	bán [ban³] "to sell,"
	bách [băch²] "cypress"	bám [bam^2] "to cling," bát [bat^2] "bowl"
2	canh [kănh¹] "soup,"	can [kan¹] "to dissuade,"
	cách [<i>kăch</i> ²] "away"	$\mathbf{cam} [kam^1]$ "orange," $\mathbf{cát} [kat^2]$ "sand
3	sách [shặch²] "book,"	sát [shat²] "adjacent," sáng [shang²] "bright,"
	sánh [shănh²] "comparative"	sán [shan ²] "tapeworm"
4	khách [khăch²] "guest,"	khát [khat²] "thirsty,"
	khánh [<i>khănh</i> ²] "lithophone"	khác [khak²] "different," khám [kham²] "jail"

Pronunciation of Consonants after O, Ô, U

A number of final consonants are pronounced in conjunction with a secondary bilabial consonant (lip rounding pronunciation) when they follow the round vowels \mathbf{o} , $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$, \mathbf{u} . This phonetic phenomenon, known as *co-pronunciation*, is not shown in the spelling. Specific cases are the following:

- After \mathbf{o} , $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$, \mathbf{u} , \mathbf{a} word ending in \mathbf{c} is pronounced with an additional \mathbf{p} sound, shown with superscripted **p** in parentheses (which is not shown in the actual spelling) in the following examples: $\mathbf{c\acute{o}c^{(p)}}$ [$kahkp^2$] "toad," $\mathbf{h\^{o}c^{(p)}}$ [$hohkp^6$] "drawer," $\mathbf{chuc^{(p)}}$ [$chookp^6$] "ten."
- After **o**, **ô**, **u**, **a** word ending in **ng** is pronounced with an additional **m** sound, shown with a superscripted **m** in parentheses (which is not shown in the actual spelling) in the following examples: **nóng**^(m) [nahngm²] "hot," **không**^(m) [khohngm¹] "no, not," **đúng**^(m) [doongm²] "correct."
- Note that when $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$ is preceded by \mathbf{u} (both forming a *diphthong*), lip-rounding co-pronunciation does not apply to words ending either with **c** or with **ng**: $\mathbf{cuoc} [kwohk^2]$ "hoe," \mathbf{uong} [wohng²] "to drink."
- The two co-pronunciation cases shown above are present in all Vietnamese dialects. In many central and southern dialects, additional co-pronunciation cases are found. These cases will be discussed in Chapter 10.

AUDIO 9

Lip-rounding Co-pronunciation

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words that include a lip-rounding co-pronunciation. Repeat after the speaker.

1.	$\mathbf{c\acute{o}c^{(p)}}$ [$kahkp^2$] "toad," $\mathbf{h\^{o}c^{(p)}}$ [$hohkp^6$] "drawer," $\mathbf{chuc^{(p)}}$ [$chookp^6$] "ten"
2.	$\mathbf{n\acute{o}ng^{(m)}}[nahngm^2]$ "hot," $\mathbf{kh\acute{o}ng^{(m)}}[khohngm^1]$ "no," $\mathbf{d\acute{u}ng^{(m)}}[doongm^2]$ "correct"

AUDIO 10

Final Consonants and Lip-rounding Co-pronunciation

Listen to the following words that end in the same consonants. The words in the left column are co-pronounced with lip rounding due to their round vowels. The words in the right column do not include a lip-rounding co-pronunciation since they do not contain round vowels.

	With lip-rounding co-pronunciation	Without lip-rounding co-pronunciation
1	học [hahkp ⁶] "to learn"	hạc [<i>hak</i> ⁶] "crane"
2	sốc [shohkp²] "shock"	sắc [shăk²] "sharp"
3	lúc [lookp²] "period"	lắc [<i>lăk</i> ²] "to shake"

	With lip-rounding co-pronunciation	Without lip-rounding co-pronunciation
4	cong [kahngm¹] "bent"	$\mathbf{c\breve{a}ng}[k\breve{a}ng^1]$ "stretched"
5	cung [koongm ¹] "bow"	cwng $[k ung^1]$ "dear"
6	chung [choongm ¹] "common"	chưng [chŭng¹] "to display"

II. PRACTICE

AUDIO 11

A. Initial consonants

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words containing the initial consonants whose pronunciations are subtly different. Repeat after the speaker.

	D	Т	TH	TR
1	đai [die¹] "belt"	tai [tie ¹] "ear"	thai [thie ¹] "fetus"	trai [trie¹] "boy"
	G/GH	C/K	KH	Н
2	gai [gie1] "thorn"	cai [kie¹] "to quit"	khai [khie ¹] "declare"	hai [hie ¹] "two"
3	ghe $[ge^1]$ "boat"	ke [<i>ke</i> ¹] "quay"	khe $[khe^1]$ "slit"	he [<i>he</i> ¹] "carp"
	M	N	NH	NG/NGH
4	mai [mie ¹] " morrow"	nai [nie ¹] "deer"	nhai [nhie ¹] "chew"	ngai [ngie ¹] "throne"
5	mi [<i>mee</i> ¹] "eyelid"	ni [nee ¹] "size"	nhi [<i>nhee</i> ¹] "kid"	nghi [ngee ¹] "doubt"
	S	X	СН	TR
6	song [shahngm ¹]	xong [sahngm ¹]	chong [chahngm ¹]	trong [trahngm ¹]
0	"but"	"end"	"light"	"inside"
7	sa [sha¹] "to fall"	xa [<i>sa</i> ¹] "far"	cha [<i>cha</i> ¹] "father"	tra [tra ¹] "to consult"

AUDIO 12

B. The consonants b and d

Listen to the pronunciation of the stop consonants **b** and **d** in the following Vietnamese words and contrast them with their English counterparts in the words provided.

	Vietnamese B Implosive	English B Non-implosive
1	bay [băy ¹] "to fly"	bay
2	bom [bahm ¹] "bomb"	bomb
3	bôi [bohy¹] "to apply"	boy
	Vietnamese D Implosive	English D Non-implosive
4	đây [<i>day</i> ¹] "here"	day
5	đai [die¹] "belt"	die

C. Lip-rounding co-pronunciation

Listen to the pronunciation of the following words and circle the ones with a lip-rounding co-pronunciation.

- **lăng** [*lăng*¹] "mausoleum"
- 2. **lông** [lohngm¹] "feather"
- 3. **lung** [loongm¹] "far away"
- 4. lang [lang¹] "wolf"
- 5. **lung** [lŭng¹] "back"
- 6. **luống** [lwohng²] "bed (of plants)"
- 7. **loc** [lahkp⁶] "to filter"
- 8. **luc** [lookp⁶] "to forage"
- 9. lat [lat⁶] "tasteless"
- 10. **lot** $[luht^6]$ "light (color)"
- 11. **luôc** [lwohk⁶] "to boil"
- 12. **lực** $[l\breve{u}k^6]$ "strength"

D. Same spelling, different pronunciation of vowel due to the final consonant letters

Put the following words in Column A if their letter a represents an open vowel sound (equivalent to the normal spelling a), and in Column B if their letter a represents a brief, less open vowel sound (together with words having the normal spelling $\mathbf{\check{a}}$).

cắp "to grip" – cánh "wing" – cáng "stretcher" – cắn "to bite" – cán "handle" – cách "method" – các "plural marker" – cám "bran" – cắm "to pitch" – cắt "to cut" – cát "sand"

Column A / Open vowel	Column B / Brief vowel			

E. In a café

Listen to the following dialogue and repeat after the speakers. Single underline the words that contain the letter a representing \mathbf{a} brief vowel (equivalent to the normal spelling $\mathbf{\check{a}}$) and *double* underline the words that have a lip-rounding co-pronunciation.



Bối bàn Chào cô! Cô muốn dùng gì?

chaw⁵ koh¹ koh¹ mwohn² yoongm⁵ yee⁵

Hello, Miss. What would you like to have? Waiter Khách Chào anh! Ở đây có những thức uống nào?

chaw⁵ ănh¹ uh⁴ day¹ kah² nhŭng³ thŭk² wohng² naw⁵

Customer Hello, Brother. What beverages are there here?

Bối bàn Chúng tôi có cà-phê đen, cà-phê sữa, trà, nước ngọt và nước lạnh.

choongm² tohy¹ kah² ka⁵ feh¹ den¹ kah⁵ feh¹ shŭuh³ tra⁵ nŭuhk² ngaht⁶

va⁵ nŭuhk² lănh⁶

Waiter We have black coffee, coffee with milk, tea, sodas and water.

Khách Cho tôi một ly cà-phê sữa đá. Cám ơn anh.

chah¹ tohy¹ moht⁶ ka⁵ feh¹ shŭuh³ da² kam² uhn¹ ănh¹

Give me a cup of iced coffee with milk. Thank you. Customer

Bối bàn Không có chi.

khohngm¹ kah² chee¹

Waiter You're welcome.

F. At the fast food counter

Listen to the following dialogue and repeat after the speakers. Underline the words that end with a nasal consonant (m, n, ng, nh).



Nhân viên Chào ông! Ông muốn mua món gì?

chaw⁵ ohngm¹ ohngm¹ mwohn² moouh¹ mahn² yee⁵

Server Hello, sir. What would you like to get?

Khách Chào bà! Cho tôi một ổ bánh mì thịt nướng.

chaw⁵ ba⁵ chah¹ tohy¹ moht⁶ oh⁴ bănh² mee⁵ theet⁶ nŭuhng²

Hello, ma'am. Give me a grilled steak sandwich. Customer

Nhân viên Ông cần gì nữa không?

ohngm¹ kun⁵ yee⁵ nŭuh³ khohngm¹

Server What else would you need?

Khách Làm ơn cho tôi một phần bánh cuốn nhân tôm và một phần xôi đậu đen.

lam⁵ uhn¹ chah¹ tohy¹ moht⁵ fun⁵ bănh² kwohn² nhun¹ tohm¹ va⁵ moht⁶

fun⁵ sohy¹ dohw⁶ den¹

Customer Please give me a portion of rice batter rolls with shrimp stuffing and a por-

tion of black bean sticky rice.

G. In a restaurant

Listen to the following conversation. Repeat after the speakers.

Bối bàn Chào ông bà! Mời ông bà xem thực đơn.

chaw⁵ ohngm¹ ba⁵ muhy⁵ ohngm¹ ba⁵ sem¹ thŭk⁶ duhn¹

Hello, sir and ma'am. Please take a look at the menu. Waiter

Thực khách A Tôi gọi một tô phở tái gân lớn.

tohy¹ goy⁶ moht⁶ toh¹ fuh³ tie² gun¹ luhn²

I would like to order a large bowl of rare beef noodles with tendon. Diner A

Thực khách B Còn tôi, cho tôi một đĩa cơm gà.

kahn⁵ tohy¹ chah¹ tohy¹ moht⁶ deeuh³ kuhm¹ ga⁵

Diner B As for me, give me one plate of chicken rice.

Bối bàn Ông bà có muốn uống gì không?

ohngm¹ ba⁵ kah² mwohn² wohng² yee⁵ khohngm¹

Waiter Would you like to drink anything?

Thực khách A Cho tôi một ly chanh muối.

chah¹ tohy¹ moht⁶ lee¹ chănh¹ mwohy²

Diner A Give me a glass of salted lemonade. Thực khách B Và cho tôi một ly sữa đâu nành nóng.

va⁵ chah¹ tohy¹ moht⁶ lee¹ shŭuh³ dohw⁶ nănh⁵ nahngm²

Diner B And for me, a glass of hot soy milk.

III. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

The Verb Có

The verb $\mathbf{co} [kah^2]$ is used as two types of verb. The first type is that of an *impersonal verb*, equivalent to the English expressions "there is" and "there are." The second type is that of a regular, personal verb, meaning "to have."

Ở đây **có** cà-phê đá không, cô? uh⁴ day¹ kah² ka⁵ feh¹ da² khohngm¹ koh¹ "Is there iced coffee here, Miss?"

Chúng tôi **có** đủ loại cà-phê. choongm² tohy¹ kah² doo⁴ lwie⁶ ka⁵ feh¹ "We have all kinds of coffee drinks."

The Adverb Có

As an adverb, **có** means "yes" in several contexts, especially in Yes-No questions in the so-called frame construction **có... không?**: **Cô có thích ăn chè không?** [koh¹ kah² theech² ăn¹ che⁵ khohngm¹] ("Do you like to eat sweet soup (or not)?"). To this type of question, $c\acute{o}$ is used to mean "yes" in an answer: **Có, tôi thích ăn chè lắm**. [kah² tohy¹ theech² ăn¹ che⁵ lăm²] ("Yes, I like to eat sweet soup very much").

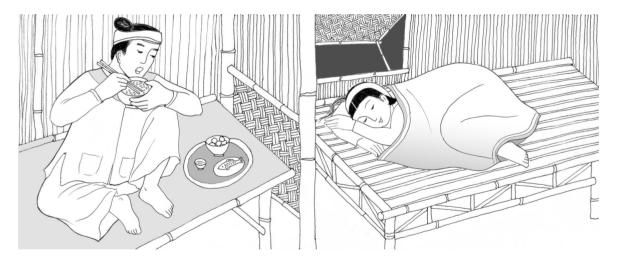
IV. PROVERB



KHÉO ĂN THÌ NO. KHÉO CO THÌ ẤM.

khew² ăn¹ thee⁵ nah¹ khew² kah¹ thee⁵ um²

- **Literal meaning:** If you eat wisely, you will be full; if you curl up deftly, you will be warm.
- **Figurative meaning:** You should know how to make do within your limited means.
- **Cultural implication:** The proverb reflects the way poor people, mostly in the countryside, try to get by with their lives in a philosophical way.



V. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TÙ' - NOUNS

bánh mì [bănh² mee⁵] bread, sandwich

bò [bah⁵] cow; beef

bún [boon²] rice vermicelli

cà-phê $\lceil ka^5 feh^1 \rceil$ coffee

chè $[che^5]$ sweet soup dessert

com [kuhm¹] rice

đĩa [deeuh³] plate

đũa [doouh³] chopsticks

gà $[ga^5]$ hen; chicken

heo [hew¹] pig; pork

ly [lee¹] glass

 \mathbf{m} i [mee^5] egg noodles

món [*mahn*²] item; dish

muỗng [*mwohng*³] spoon

nĩa [neeuh³] fork

nước [*nŭuhk*²] water

nước đá $\lceil n \ddot{u} u h k^1 da^2 \rceil$ ice

nước ngọt $\lceil n \ddot{u} u h k^1 ngah t^6 \rceil$ soda, soft drink

phần [fun⁵] portion, part

ph \dot{o} [fuh^4] rice noodles

sữa [shữuh³] milk

tách [tăch²] cup

thit [theet⁶] meat

thức ăn [thŭk² ăn¹] food

thực đơn [thŭk⁶ duhn¹] menu

thức uống [thŭk² wohng²] beverage, drink

tô [toh¹] bowl

tôm [tohm¹] shrimp

xôi [sohy¹] sticky rice

TÍNH TỪ - ADIECTIVES

 $\tilde{\mathbf{am}} [um^2]$ warm, lukewarm

 $\mathbf{d}\hat{\boldsymbol{\sigma}}$ [vuh^4] bad: tasteless

đói [doy²] hungry

khát [*khat*²] thirsty

lanh [lănh⁶] cold

măn $\lceil m \breve{a} n^6 \rceil$ salty

ngon [ngahn¹] delicious

ngot $\lceil ngaht^6 \rceil$ sweet

nóng [nahnam²] hot

vừa [*vŭuh*⁵] medium

ĐÔNG TỪ - VERBS

ăn $\lceil \breve{a}n^1 \rceil$ to eat

cần [kun⁵] to need

cho $\lceil chah^1 \rceil$ to give

có $\lceil kah^2 \rceil$ to have; there is/there are

dùng [yoongm⁵] to use; to have (meal, food)

goi $[goy^6]$ to call; to order (food, drinks)

mòi $\lceil muhy^5 \rceil$ to invite

muốn $[mwohn^2]$ to want

uống [wohng²] to drink

xem $\lceil sem^1 \rceil$ to look at; to watch

THÀNH NGỮ - EXPRESSIONS

cám ơn [kam² uhn¹] thanks

không có chi [khohngm¹ kah² chee¹]

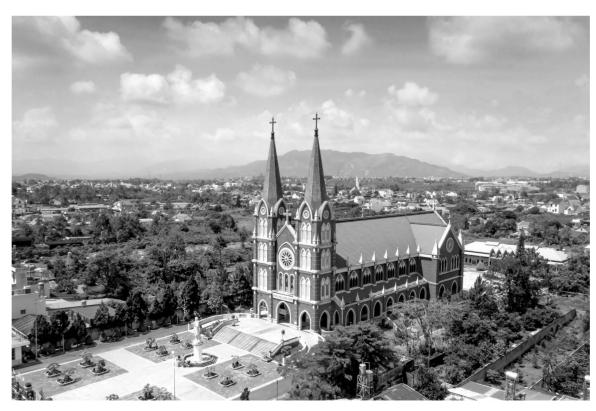
you're welcome

làm on [lam⁵ uhn¹] please









CHAPTER 5

Tones - Tone Marks

Clothing and Shopping



I. TONES AND TONE MARKS

Vietnamese is a tonal language. A tone is a *fixed pitch* associated with a word to give it a distinct meaning. There are six tones in standard Vietnamese. In spelling, however, only five of the tones are represented by tone marks. The numbers used in the pronunciations are based on the descending order of the tones, from highest to lowest.

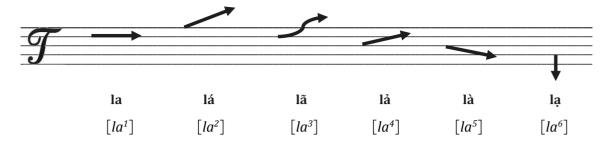
AUDIO 1

Tones

Listen to the pronunciation of the consonants represented by the letters.

	Tone description	Tone mark	Name	Example
1	Mid-high; level	N/A	N/A	la [la ¹] "to shout"
2	High; rising	,	sắc "sharp"	$\mathbf{l\acute{a}}$ [la^2] "leaf"
3	Mid-high; rising; glottalized	~	ngã "tumble"	$\mathbf{l\tilde{a}} [la^3]$ "water"
4	Mid-low; rising	7	hỏi "asking"	lå [la ⁴] "exhausted"
5	Mid-low; falling	`	huyền "deep"	$\mathbf{l}\mathbf{\dot{a}}$ [la^5] "to be"
6	Low-falling; glottalized	•	nặng "heavy"	lạ [la ⁶] "strange"

The tones can be conceptually represented using a musical staff with arrows instead of notes (their height on the staff relatively corresponding to their pitch level), and a letter T (symbolizing "tone") for decorative purposes, as follows:



NOTES ON TONES

Regional Differences

Only in most northern dialects do all the six tones exist, with a clear distinction between the midhigh, rising and glottalized tone (as in $\tilde{\bf la}$ [la^3]) and the mid-low, rising tone (as in $\tilde{\bf la}$ [la^4]). In the central and southern regions, these two tones normally merge into one resembling the latter tone.

Tones in the Audio

The tones heard in the audio are pronounced in a neutral manner for practical purposes, to help the learner distinguish one word from another based on the sole difference between them, other factors being equal. Tone patterns in regional dialects can differ ranging from lightly to greatly.

Mid-high Level Tone

Pay attention to the fact that the mid-high, level tone is a "tone" in its own right, although there is no accent mark to represent it in the spelling. In other words, this is an "unmarked" tone.

Accidental Gaps

A form can have up to six different tones, yielding six different meanings. However, not every form has all the six tones. When a form is associated with a tone without containing any meaning, it is called an "accidental gap" in the language. For example, only three of the following six forms are real "words" (with a meaning): **cua** [$koouh^1$] "crab," **cúa** [$koouh^2$] "palate," ***cũa** [$koouh^3$] (no meaning), **của** $\lceil koouh^4 \rceil$ "of," ***cùa** $\lceil koouh^5 \rceil$ (no meaning), ***cụa** $\lceil koouh^5 \rceil$ (no meaning).

Stop Consonant Ending

If a syllable or a word ends in a stop consonant (spelled as c, ch, p, t), only two tones are possible, namely the high-rising tone (Number 2 in the chart) and the low-falling, glottalized tone (Number 6 in the chart). Some examples are $\mathbf{cóc} [kahkp^1]$ "toad," $\mathbf{coc} [kahkp^6]$ "stake," $\mathbf{sách} [sh\check{a}ch^2]$ "book," sach $[sh\bar{a}ch^6]$ "clean," lớp $[luhp^2]$ "class," lợp $[luhp^6]$ "to roof," hát $[hat^2]$ "to sing," hạt $\lceil hat^6 \rceil$ "seed."

NOTES ON TONE MARKS (ACCENT MARKS/DIACRITICS)

Tone Mark Naming

The Vietnamese term for "mark" is $\mathbf{d\tilde{a}u} \ [yohw^2]$. In order to name the tone marks, one will say (from number 2 to number 6 in the chart above) **dấu sắc** [$yohw^2 shăk^2$], **dấu ngã** [$yohw^2 nga^3$],

dấu hỏi $[yohw^2 hoy^4]$, dấu huyền $[yohw^2 hwyehn^5]$, dấu năng $[yohw^2 năng^6]$, respectively. When referring to the tones themselves, for which the term is **thanh** $[th\ddot{a}nh^{1}]$, one should say thanh ngang (1) [thănh¹ ngang¹], thanh sắc (2) [thănh¹ shăk²], thanh ngã (3) [thănh¹ nga^3], thanh hỏi (4) [thănh¹ hoy⁴], thanh huyền (5) [thănh¹ hwyehn⁵], thanh năng (6) [thănh¹ năng⁶].

Tone Mark Placement

Tone marks, also known as accent marks or diacritics, are placed over (or under, for the low-falling, glottalized tone) a vowel letter to indicate its tone. In a diphthong (with two vowel letters, one representing a full vowel and the other, a semi-vowel (or glide)), the tone mark is placed over (or under) the vowel that represents a full vowel, not on the vowel letter that represents a semi-vowel. A difference in the position of tone marks can be observed in the words $\mathbf{qua} \left[kwa^4 \right]$ "fruit," where **a** is a full vowel (thus bearing the tone mark) and **u** is a semi-vowel, and $\mathbf{cua} [koouh^4]$ "of," where **u** is a full vowel (bearing the tone mark) and **a** is a semi-vowel. The same rule applies to words containing triphthongs: **người** $[ng \check{u}uhy^5]$ "person" (σ is a full vowel),

Tone Marks and Vowel Accent Marks

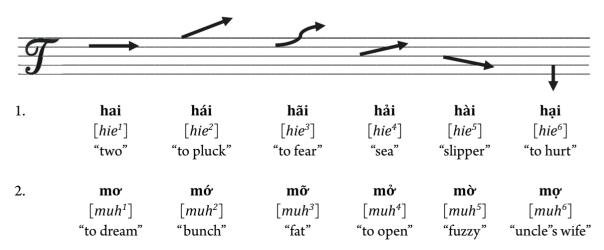
As observable, a tone mark can cooccur with a vowel accent mark (Chapter 2) in many instances. While the arrangement of the marks is automatic with word processing on a computer, it should be carefully done when hand writing words elsewhere. For example, the "sharp" mark (dấu sắc) would be placed to the right of the circumflex, as in the word $\mathbf{t\tilde{o}t} [toht^2]$ "good."

II. PRACTICE

AUDIO 2

A. Tone differentiation

Listen to the words with different tones given below and visually associate them with how they are represented on the musical staff. Repeat after the speaker.



3.	bao	báo	bão	bảo	bào	bạo
	$[baw^1]$	$[baw^2]$	$[baw^3]$	$[baw^4]$	$[baw^5]$	$[baw^6]$
	"bag"	"newspaper"	"storm"	"to tell"	"to smooth"	"bold"
4.	đây	đấy	đẫy	đẩy	đầy	đậy
	$[day^1]$	$[day^2]$	$[day^3]$	$[day^4]$	$[day^5]$	$[day^6]$
	"here"	"there"	"corpulent"	"to push"	"full"	"to cover"
5.	vân	vấn	vẫn	vẩn	vần	vận
	$[vun^1]$	$[vun^2]$	$[vun^3]$	$[vun^4]$	$[vun^5]$	$[vun^6]$
	"vein"	"to roll"	"still"	"murky"	"syllable"	"chance"

B. Tones and accent marks

Listen to the pronunciation of the words below to recognize the tones that come with them. The words are given without tone marks. Write the correct tone marks on each word, except for the ones that bear the mid-high, rising tone, which has no corresponding mark.

1.	quân tây	"trousers, pants"	9.	ao thun	"T-shirt"
2.	ao đâm	"dress"	10.	cơ nho	"small size"
3.	non la	"conical hat"	11.	gang tay	"gloves"
4.	ca-vat	"necktie"	12.	vay ngăn	"miniskirt"
5.	ao lot	"undershirt"	13.	ao dai	"Vietnamese dress"
6.	ao quân	"clothing"	14.	ao khoac	"jacket"
7.	vơ dai	"stockings"	15.	mu len	"woolen cap"
8.	giav thê thao	"tennis shoes"			

AUDIO 4

C. Sentences containing words of the same tones

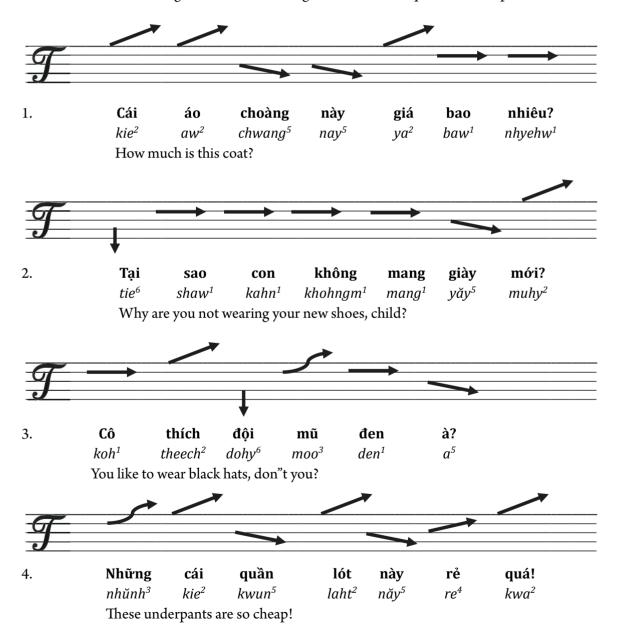
Listen to the pronunciation of the words below to recognize the tones that come with them. The words are given without tone marks. Write the correct tone marks on each word, except for the ones that bear the mid-high, rising tone, which has no corresponding mark.

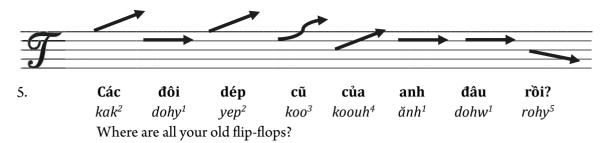
- 1. (Mid-high, level tone) **Hôm qua tôi đi mua sơ-mi**. hohm¹ kwa¹ tohy¹ dee¹ moouh¹ shuh¹ mee¹ "I went shirt shopping yesterday."
- 2. (High-rising tone) **Chúng nó có áo ấm mới.** choongm² nah² kah² aw² um² muhy² "They have new sweaters."
- 3. (*Mid-high-rising, glottalized tone*) **Vũ vẫn giữ mũ cũ.** $voo^3 vun^3 y u^3 moo^3 koo^3$ "Vu still keeps his old hats."
- 4. (*Mid-low, rising tone*) **Trẻ nhỏ mở cửa sổ.** tre^4 $nhah^4$ muh^4 $kŭuh^4$ $shoh^3$ "The kids were opening the windows."

- 5. (Mid-low, falling tone) **Bà cần giày màu vàng à?** $ba^5 kun^5 yay^5 maw^5 vang^5 a^5$ – "Do you need yellow shoes, Ma'am?"
- 6. (Low-falling, glottalized tone) Cậu Hiệp mượn mẹ một triệu bạc. kohw⁶ hyehp⁶ mŭuhn⁶ me⁶ moht⁶ tryehw⁶ bak⁶ – "Uncle Hiep borrowed one million dong from Mom."

D. Sentences containing words of various tones

Listen to the following sentences containing various tones. Repeat after the speaker.





E. In a clothing boutique

Listen to the following dialogue and pay attention to the tone variety in the sentences. Repeat after the speakers.



Chào ông! Ông cần gì ạ? Người bán hàng

chaw⁵ ohngm¹ ohngm¹ kun⁵ yee⁵ a⁶

Hello, sir! How can I help you? ("What do you need?") Salesclerk

Khách hàng Chào cô! Tôi cần vài đôi vớ đen, một cái sơ-mi trắng dài tay và một bộ

vét nâu.

chaw⁵ koh¹ tohy¹ kun⁵ vie⁵ dohy¹ vuh² den¹ moht⁶ kie² aw² shuh¹

mee¹ trăng² yie⁵ tăy¹ va⁵ moht⁶ boh⁶ vet² nohw¹

I need some black socks, a white long-sleeve shirt and a brown suit. Customer

Người bán hàng Ông mặc áo và quần cỡ nào?

ohngm¹ măk⁶ aw² va⁵ kwun⁵ kuh³ naw⁵

Salesclerk What size shirt and pants do you wear?

Khách hàng Tôi mặc áo cỡ vừa và mặc quần cỡ 32, chiều dài 30.

 $tohy^1 m \ddot{a} k^6 a w^2 k u h^3 v \ddot{u} u h^5 v a^5 m \ddot{a} k^6 k w u n^5 k u h^4 [b a^1 m \ddot{u} u h y^1 h i e^1]$

chyehw⁵ yie⁵ [ba¹ mŭuhy¹]

Customer I wear a medium size in shirts and size 32, 30 length pants.

Người bán hàng Ông có muốn mặc thử những thứ này không?

ohngm¹ kah² mwohn¹ măk⁶ thŭ⁴ nhŭng³ thŭ² năy⁵ khohngm¹

Salesclerk Would you like to try on these items?

Khách hàng Có chứ! À, tôi cần một đôi giày nâu nữa. Tôi mang cỡ số 8.

kah² chữ² a⁵ tohy¹ kun⁵ moht6 dohy¹ yặy⁵ mặw⁵ nohw¹ nữuh³ tohy¹

mana¹ kuh³ shoh² tam²

Customer Of course. Oh, I also wanted a pair of brown shoes. I wear a size 8.

Người bán hàng Ông trả bằng tiền mặt hay bằng thẻ tín dụng ạ?

ohngm¹ tra⁴ băng⁵ tyehn⁵ măt⁶ hăy¹ the⁴ teen² yungm⁶ a⁶

Salesclerk Do you pay in cash or with a credit card? Khách hàng Tôi trả bằng tiền mặt. Được không, cô?

tohy¹ tra⁴ băng⁵ tyehn⁵ măt6 dŭuhk6 khohngm¹ koh¹

I pay in cash. Is that OK with you? Customer

F. Using numbers

Write sentences in Vietnamese based on the English sentences provided and write out the numbers in words. Refer to the Notes on Grammar section for information on numbers and the Active Vocabulary list for necessary words.



- 1. I wear size 101-centimeter length pants.
- This gold watch costs 15 million *dong*.

3. All those high heel shoes cost no less than 400 dollars. 4. These Vietnamese dresses are 95 centimeters long. 5. Does this silver necklace cost 2,361 dollars?

III. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

A. Plural markers

Nouns in Vietnamese are not marked for plural forms. Noun plurality is expressed in different ways, one of which is the use of the particles—called "plural markers"—những and các. **Những** is used before a noun (usually with a classifier in between where necessary) to mean "some of...," while **các** means "all of...."

Những đôi vớ xám này đắt lắm. $nh \bar{u} ng^3 dohy^1 vuh^2 sam^2 n\bar{u} d\bar{u}^2 l\bar{u}^2$ "These gray socks are very expensive."

Các khăn quàng lụa đã bán hết rồi. kak² khăn¹ kwang⁵ loouh6 da³ ban² heht² rohy⁵ "All the silk scarves are sold out."

Plurality can also be expressed when nouns are used alone or in compound forms:

Tôi ít khi mặc **quần** jeans. tohy¹ eet² khee¹ măk⁵ kwun⁵ jeans "I rarely wear jeans."

Quần áo và giày đép của em đâu cả rồi? kwun⁵ aw² va⁵ yay⁵ yep² koouh⁴ kak² em¹ dohw¹ ka⁴ rohy⁵ "Where are all your clothes and shoes?"

B. Numbers

Observe the numbers that follow and pay attention to the irregular forms shown in italics.

- **không** $\lceil khohngm^1 \rceil$ (0) **môt** $\lceil moht^6 \rceil$ (1) **hai** $\lceil hie^1 \rceil$ (2) **ba** $\lceil ba^1 \rceil$ (3) **bốn** $\lceil bohn^2 \rceil$ $(4) - n \breve{a} m \lceil n \breve{a} m^1 \rceil (5) - s \acute{a} u \lceil s h \breve{a} w^2 \rceil (6) - b \acute{a} v \lceil b \breve{a} v^4 \rceil (7) - t \acute{a} m \lceil t a m^2 \rceil (8) - c h \acute{n} \lceil c h e e n^2 \rceil$ (9) – **mười** $\lceil m \ddot{u} u h y^5 \rceil$ (10)
- **mười môt** $[m \ddot{u} u h y^5 m o h t^6]$ (11) **mười hai** $[m \ddot{u} u h y h i e^1]$ (12) **mười ba** $[m \ddot{u} u h y^5 b a^1]$ (13) – mười bốn $\lceil m \ddot{u} u h y^5 b o h n^1 \rceil$ (14) – mười lăm $\lceil m \ddot{u} u h y^5 l \ddot{a} m^1 \rceil$ (15) – mười sáu $\lceil m \ddot{u} u h v^5 s h \ddot{a} w^1 \rceil$ (16) – **mười bảy** $\lceil m \ddot{u} u h v^5 b \ddot{a} v^4 \rceil$ (17) – **mười tám** $\lceil m \ddot{u} u h v^5 t a m^2 \rceil$ (18) – **mwòi chín** $[m \ddot{u}uhy^5 cheen^2]$ (19)
- hai mươi $\lceil hie^1 m u u h y^1 \rceil$ (20) hai mươi mốt $\lceil hie^1 m u u h y^1 m o h t^2 \rceil$ (21) hai mươi hai $[hie^1 m u u h y^1 h ie^1]$ (22) – hai mươi ba $[hie^1 m u u h y^1 b a^1]$ (23) – hai mươi bốn $[hie^1 m u u h y^1 b a^1]$ $bohn^1$ (24) – hai mươi lăm $[hie^1 m uuhy^1 lăm^1]$ (25) – hai mươi sáu (26) $[hie^1 m uuhy^1]$ $sh\breve{a}w^2$] – hai mươi bảy (27) [$hie^1 m \breve{u}uhy^1 b \breve{a}y^4$] – hai mươi tám (28) [$hie^1 m \breve{u}uhy^1 tam^1$] - hai mươi chín [hie¹ mữuhy¹ cheen¹] (29)
- **ba mươi** $\lceil ba \ m \ddot{u} u h y^1 \rceil$ (30) **bốn mươi** $\lceil bohn^1 \ m \ddot{u} u h y^1 \rceil$ (40) **năm mươi** $\lceil n \ddot{a} m^1 \ m \ddot{u} u h y^1 \rceil$ (50) – sáu mươi $[sh\bar{a}w^2 m\bar{u}uhy^1]$ (60) – bảy mươi $[b\bar{a}y^4 m\bar{u}uhy^1]$ (70) – tám mươi $[tam^1$ $m\ddot{u}uhy^{1}$ (80) – [cheen¹ $m\ddot{u}uhy^{1}$] **chín mươi** (90)
- $\mathbf{m\hat{o}t}$ trăm $\lceil moht^6 trăm^1 \rceil$ (100) $\lceil hie^1 trăm^1 \rceil$ hai trăm (200) $\lceil ba^1 trăm^1 \rceil$ ba trăm (300). etc.
- $\mathbf{m\hat{o}t}$ $\mathbf{ng\hat{a}n}$ $\lceil moht^6 \ ngan^5 \rceil$ (1,000) \mathbf{hai} $\mathbf{ng\hat{a}n}$ $\lceil hie^1 \ ngan^5 \rceil$ (2,000) \mathbf{ba} $\mathbf{ng\hat{a}n}$ $\lceil ba^1 \ ngan^5 \rceil$ (3,000), etc.
- mười ngàn $[m \ddot{u} u h y^5 ngan^5]$ (10,000) hai mươi ngàn $[hie^1 m \ddot{u} u h y^1 ngan^5]$ (20.000) **môt trăm ngàn** $[moht^6 trăm^1 ngan^5]$ (100,000), etc.
- \hat{mot} triêu $[moht^6 tryehw^5]$ (1,000,000) \hat{mot} tỷ $[moht^6 tee^4]$ (1,000,000,000) \hat{mot} ngàn $\mathbf{t\dot{v}}$ [moht⁶ ngan⁵ tee⁴] (1,000,000,000,000).

Notes on numbers:

- When $n \bar{a} m [n \bar{a} m^1]$ (5) appears after another number, it becomes $l \bar{a} m [l \bar{a} m^1]$ (15, 25, 35, 45, etc.)
- When **mwời** $[m \check{u}uhy^5]$ (10) appears after another number, it becomes **mwơi** $[m \check{u}uhy^1]$ (20, 30, 40, 50, etc.).
- When $\mathbf{môt} [moht^6]$ (1) appears after \mathbf{mwoi} , it becomes $\mathbf{mốt} [moht^2]$ (21, 31, 41, 51, etc.).
- In Vietnam, a period is used between whole numbers, and a comma between a whole number and a decimal number. Thus, one thousand five hundred forty-six point five zero is written as 1.546,50.
- A zero in the hundreds is said as **không trăm** [khohngm¹ trăm¹] ("zero hundred") and a zero in the tens is said as $l\dot{e} [le^4]$ ("odd"). Thus 2,005 is said as hai ngàn không trăm $l\dot{e}$ năm $[hie^1]$ $ngan^5 khohngm^1 trăm^1 le^4 năm^1$].
- In the northern dialects, **ngàn** $[ngan^5]$ (thousand) is **nghìn** $[ngeen^5]$.

Numbers in the thousands in Vietnamese are said fully, such as một ngàn chín trăm tám **mươi lăm** [moht⁶ ngan⁵ cheen¹ trăm¹ tam² mǔuhy⁵ lăm¹] (one thousand nine hundred eighty-five), and never as "nineteen eighty-five" as in English.

IV. PROVERB

AUDIO 7

ÁO MĂC SAO QUA KHỞI ĐẦU.

aw² măk⁵ shaw¹ kwa¹ khoy⁴ dohw⁵

- **Literal meaning:** A shirt cannot be worn past the head.
- **Figurative meaning:** Children must respect and obey their parents.
- **Cultural implication:** The family is a very important unit in Vietnamese society, in which the parents have the utmost authority in most everything that family members do.



V. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TÙ' - NOUNS

áo choàng $[aw^2 chwana^5]$ coat **áo dài** [*aw*² *yie*⁵] Vietnamese dress **áo đầm** $[aw^2 dum^5]$ dress **áo khoác** [aw² khwak²] blazer **áo len** [aw² len¹] sweater **áo thun** $\lceil aw^2 thoon^1 \rceil$ T-shirt **áo vét** $\lceil aw^2 vet^2 \rceil$ suit jacket $\tilde{\mathbf{co}}$ [kuh^4] size **dây chuyền** [yay¹ chwyehn⁵] necklace **giá** $[ya^2]$ price **khăn quàng** [*khăn*¹ *kwang*⁵] scarf **nón** [nahn²] hat **quần tây** [kwun⁵ tay¹] pants **số** [shoh²] number **tiền** [*tyehn*⁵] money váy [văy²] skirt $\mathbf{v}\hat{\mathbf{o}} [vuh^2] \operatorname{sock}$

TÍNH TỪ - ADIECTIVES

chât [chut⁶] tight **dài** [*yie*⁵] long $\mathbf{d\check{a}t} \left[d\breve{a}t^2 \right]$ expensive **ngắn** $[ngăn^2]$ short (lengthwise) \mathbf{re} [re^4] affordable, cheap **rộng** [rohngm⁶] loose; wide

ĐÔNG TỪ - VERBS

bán $\lceil ban^2 \rceil$ to sell **cởi ra** $\lceil kuhv^4 ra^1 \rceil$ to take off (clothing) **đếm** [dehm²] to count **đi mua sắm** [dee¹ moouh¹ shăm²] to go shopping **đôi** $\lceil dohy^6 \rceil$ to wear (on the head) $\mathbf{m\breve{a}c} [m\breve{a}k^6]$ to wear (clothing) **măc vào** $[m \ddot{a} k^6 v a w^5]$ to put on (clothing) **mang** $[mang^1]$ to wear (accessories) **mua** $\lceil moouh^1 \rceil$ to buy $tr\dot{a} [tra^4]$ to pay

THÀNH NGỮ - EXPRESSIONS

*naw*⁵] what size shirt do you wear? cái quần này giá bao nhiều? [kie² kwun⁵] $n\ddot{a}y^5 ya^2 baw^1 nhyehw^1$] how much is this pair of pants? **chỉ nhận tiền mặt** [chee⁴ nhun⁶ tyehn⁵ $m\breve{a}t^6$ cash only **cô mang giày số mấy?** [koh¹ mang¹ yăy⁵ $shoh^2 may^2$] what size shoe do you wear? **ông cần gì a?** $[ohngm^1 kun^5 yee^5 a^6]$ how can I help you, sir?

anh mặc áo cỡ nào? [ặnh¹ mặk6 aw² kuh4







CHAPTER 6

Sentence Structure - Intonation

Daily Activities



I. SENTENCE STRUCTURE

In general, Vietnamese is classified as an SVO language, or one with the Subject-Verb-Object order in *declarative sentences*, which is a common word order in most of the world's languages. In negative sentences, negative adverbs precede the verb.

Tôi thường **ăn sáng** vào lúc 7 giờ.

Subject Verb Object

tohy¹ thŭuhng⁵ ăn¹ shang² vaw⁵ lookp² băy⁴ yuh⁵

"I usually have breakfast at 7 a.m."

Mẹ không bao giờ tắm vào buổi tối.

Negative adverb Verb

 me^6 khohng m^1 ba w^1 yu h^5 tă m^2 vah w^5 bwohy 4 tohy 2

"Mom never takes a bath in the evening."

Going further inside the sentence structure down to the phrase level, however, it can be observed that word order becomes different compared to English. For example, while numeral adjectives and quantifiers precede nouns as in English, *descriptive and demonstrative adjectives* follow them.

Con không ăn **mấy** quả **trứng nhỏ này** à?

Quantifier NOUN Descriptive Adj. Demonstrative Adj.

kahn¹ khohngm¹ ăn¹ may² kwa⁴ trŭng² nhah⁴ năy⁵ a⁵

"Are you not eating these small eggs?"

More often than not, *adverbs of time and place* are used at the beginning of a sentence instead of at the end.

Tối nay con nên đi ngủ sớm. tohy² năy¹ kahn¹ nehn¹ dee¹ ngoo⁴ shuhm² "You should go to bed early tonight."

Ở đây có bán thức ăn trưa.

uh⁴ day¹ kah² ban² thŭk² ăn¹ trŭuh¹

"We serve lunch here."

Regarding specific questions (equivalent to Wh-questions in English), the positions of interrogative words are different from English as well. As a rule of thumb, *interrogative pronouns* remain in the same position reserved for their relevant grammatical function as subject or object in statements (including object of a preposition or subject/object complement). Compare the statements and their corresponding questions below:

(Statement) Bố đang cạo râu trong phòng tắm. boh² dang¹ kaw6 rohw¹ trahngm¹ fahngm⁵ tăm² "Dad is shaving in the bathroom." (Question) Ai đang cạo râu trong phòng tắm? ie¹ dang¹ kaw⁶ rohw¹ trahngm¹ fahngm⁵ tăm² "Who is shaving in the bathroom?" (Statement) Chị Hoa pha cà-phê cho **anh Tuấn**. chee⁶ hwa¹ fa¹ ka⁵ feh¹ chah¹ ănh¹ twun² "Hoa is making coffee for Tuan." (Question) Chị Hoa pha cà-phê cho ai? chee⁶ hwa¹ fa¹ ka⁵ feh¹ chah¹ ie¹ "Who is Hoa making coffee for?" (Statement) Cô Thuý làm **y tá** ở bệnh viện. koh¹ thwee² lam⁵ ee¹ ta² uh⁴ behnh⁶ vyehn⁶ "Miss Thuy works as a nurse in the hospital." (Question) Cô Thuý làm **gì** ở bệnh viện? koh¹ thwee² lam⁵ yee⁵ uh⁴ behnh⁶ vyehn⁶ "What job does Miss Thuy do in the hospital?"

Other types of interrogative words have unpredictable positions in specific questions. Observation is needed to remember whether an interrogative word goes at the beginning or at the end of a question. Examine the following examples:

```
Tại sao hôm nay anh không đi làm?
tie<sup>6</sup> shaw<sup>1</sup> hohm<sup>1</sup> năy<sup>1</sup> ănh<sup>1</sup> khohngm<sup>1</sup> dee<sup>1</sup> lam<sup>5</sup>
"Why don't you go to work today?"
Con cảm thấy thế nào?
kahn<sup>1</sup> kam<sup>4</sup> thay<sup>2</sup> theh<sup>2</sup> nahw<sup>5</sup>
"How are you feeling, son?"
Mấy giờ cô đi ngủ? or Cô đi ngủ lúc mấy giờ?
may^2 yuh^5 koh^1 dee^1 ngu^4 \sim koh^1 dee^1 ngu^4 lookp^2 may^2 yuh^5
"What time do you go to bed?"
Cái áo đầm này giá bao nhiều?
kie<sup>2</sup> aw<sup>2</sup> dum<sup>5</sup> năy<sup>5</sup> ya<sup>2</sup> baw<sup>1</sup> nhyehw<sup>1</sup>
"How much is this dress?"
```

A few interrogative words even have two possible positions with different nuances:

```
Làm sao em biết mẹ sẽ đi làm về sớm?
lam<sup>5</sup> shaw<sup>1</sup> em<sup>1</sup> byeht<sup>2</sup> me<sup>6</sup> she<sup>4</sup> dee<sup>1</sup> lam<sup>5</sup> veh<sup>5</sup> shuhm<sup>2</sup>
"How do you know Mom will come home from work early today?"
(how = "by what means?")
Chị nấu món này làm sao?
chee<sup>5</sup> nohw<sup>2</sup> mahn<sup>2</sup> năy<sup>5</sup> lam<sup>5</sup> shaw<sup>1</sup>
"How do you make this dish?" (how = "in what manner?")
Khi nào các cô về nhà?
khee<sup>1</sup> naw<sup>5</sup> kak<sup>2</sup> koh<sup>1</sup> veh<sup>5</sup> nha<sup>5</sup>
"When will you come home?" (Future reference)
Các cô về nhà khi nào?
kak² koh¹ veh⁵ nha⁵ khee¹ naw⁵
"When do/did you come home?" (Present or past reference)
```

A specific question does not necessarily end with an interrogative word if the speaker chooses to use a particle (Chapter 9) after it:

Các em đi đâu đó? kak² em¹ dee¹ dohw¹ dah² "Where are you guys going, eh?"

Anh học trường **nào** vậy? ănh¹ hahkp6 trŭuhng5 naw5 vay6 "Which school are you attending, huh?"

Exclamatory adverbs are also found toward the end of exclamatory sentences:

Bài tập này khó **thế nào** ấy! bie⁵ tup⁶ năy⁵ khah² theh² naw⁵ ay² "What a difficult exercise this is!"

Me làm bánh khéo **làm sao!** me⁶ lam⁵ bănh² khew² lam⁵ shaw¹ "How skillfully Mom bakes her cakes!"

Gặp cô tôi mừng biết chừng nào! găp⁶ koh¹ tohy¹ mŭng⁵ byeht² chŭng⁵ naw⁵ "How glad I am to see you!"

Tôi nhớ các ban biết bao nhiêu! tohy¹ nhuh² kak² ban⁶ byeht² baw¹ nhyehw¹ "How much I've been missing you guys!"

II. INTONATION

Since Vietnamese is a tonal language, the tone of each word usually remains consistent throughout a given sentence, as opposed to English—a non-tonal language—where spoken pitch varies according to the speaker's attitudes or emotions. Also, final intonation in English (at the end of a phrase or a sentence) is syntactically determined (falling intonation for statements, exclamations and specific questions, rising intonation for Yes-No questions, for example). In Vietnamese, technically the tone of the last word in any type of sentence can remain as it is. Final intonation only comes into play when the speaker wants to express an attitude or an emotion together with what he or she says. Thus, emotional intonation in Vietnamese—as it can be aptly called—is usually expressed in three ways: *None* (keeping the tone of the last word unchanged, symbolized as \leftrightarrow), rising (showing a successive additive higher pitch, symbolized as \nearrow), and falling (showing a successive additive lower pitch, symbolized as \(\sigma \). Note that, however, the rising and falling final intonation are not always possible with all types of sentences, depending on what they express semantically.

AUDIO 1

A. Sentence intonations

Listen to the different final intonations expressed in the following sentences and repeat after the speaker.

- Tôi có biết gì đâu!
 - tohy¹ kah² byeht² yee⁵ dohw¹
 - "I had no idea!"
 - a. \leftrightarrow (No emotion expressed)
 - b. ≯ (Surprised)
 - c.

 ✓ (Careless)
- Con đánh răng chưa? 2.

kahn¹ dănh² răng¹ chŭuh¹

"Have you brushed your teeth?"

- a. \leftrightarrow (No emotion expressed)
- b. ∠ (Inquisitive)
- 3. Chúng tôi biết chuyện đó chứ!

choongm² tohy¹ byeht² chwyehn⁶ dah² chŭ²

"We do know that."

- a. \leftrightarrow (No emotion expressed)
- b. \nearrow (Emphatic)
- c. \(\sigma\) (Friendly)

III. PRACTICE

AUDIO 2

A. Specific questions and interrogative words

Listen to the following statements, then fill in the blanks in the accompanying specific questions (based on the underlined elements) with a correct interrogative word.

gì "what" nào "which" bao nhiêu "how much/how many" ở đâu "where at" đâu "where to" thế nào "how/what... like" làm sao "how" tại sao "why" mấy "how many" khi nào "when" bao lâu "how long"

Model Statement: Chúng tôi thường ăn **bánh mì** vào bữa ăn sáng.

choongm² tohy¹ thuuhng⁵ ăn¹ bănh² mee⁵ vaw⁵ băuh³ ăn¹

shang²

"We usually have bread for breakfast."

Các anh thường ăn **GÌ** vào bữa ăn sáng? Question:

 $kak^2 \ddot{a}nh^1 th\ddot{u}uhng^5 \ddot{a}n^1 yee^5 vaw^5 b\ddot{u}uh^3 \ddot{a}n^1 shang^2$

1.	S:	Mẹ đang ủi quần áo cho chúng tồi . me ⁶ dang ¹ ooy ⁴ kwun ⁵ aw ² chah ¹ choongm ² tohy ¹
		"Mom is ironing clothes for us."
	Q:	Mẹ đang ủi quần áo cho?
2.	S:	Em tôi mặc quần áo sau khi tắm vòi sen .
		em¹ tohy¹ măk⁶ kwun⁵ aw² shăw¹ khee¹ tăm² voy⁵ shen¹
		"My little sister gets dressed after taking a shower."
	Q:	Em của cô mặc quần áo?
3.	S:	Tôi thường đi ngủ vào lúc mười một giờ đêm.
		tohy² thŭuhng⁵ dee¹ ngoo⁴ vaw⁵ lookp² mŭuhy⁵ moht⁴ yuh⁵ dehm¹
		"I usually go to bed at 11 p.m."
	Q:	Chị thường đi ngủ vào lúc giờ?
4.	S:	Anh ấy làm việc 35 tiếng một tuần.
		\ddot{a} nh ¹ ay ² lam ⁵ vyehk ⁶ ba ¹ mŭuhy ¹ lăm ¹ tyehng ² moht ⁶ twun ⁵
		"He works 35 hours a week."
	Q:	Anh ấy làm việc tiếng một tuần?
5.	S:	Mỗi buổi sáng cô Mai trang điểm mất nửa tiếng .
		$mohy^3$ $bwohy^4$ $shang^2$ koh^1 mie^1 $trang^1$ $dyehm^4$ mut^2 $nŭuh^4$ $tyehng^2$
		"It takes Miss Mai half an hour to put on makeup every morning."
	Q:	Mỗi buổi sáng cô Mai trang điểm mất?
	Ų.	
6.	S:	Cuối tuần này chúng ta sẽ đi biển .
		kwohy² twun⁵ năy⁵ choongm² ta¹ she³ dee¹ byehn⁴
		"We will go to the beach this weekend."
	Q:	Cuối tuần này chúng ta sẽ đi?
7.	S:	Anh Huy làm việc ở ngân hàng .
		\ddot{a} n h^1 hwee 1 la m^5 vye hk^6 u h^4 ngun 1 hang 5
		"Huy works in a bank."
	Q:	Anh Huy làm việc?
8.	S:	Sáng nay cô Thuý đi làm trễ vì bị kẹt xe trên xa lộ .
٠.	•	shang ² năy ¹ koh ¹ thwee ² dee ¹ lam ⁵ treh ⁴ vee ⁵ bee ⁵ ket ⁶ se ¹ trehn ¹ sa ¹ loh ⁶
		"Miss Thuy came to work late this morning because she got stuck in traffic on the
	_	freeway."
	Q:	sáng nay cô Thuý đi làm trễ?

9.	S:	Tôi học trường Đại Học Quốc Gia Sài Gòn .
		tohy¹ hahkp⁴ trŭuhng⁵ die⁴ hahkp⁴ kwohk² ya¹ shie⁵ gahn⁵
		"I am attending the Saigon National University."
	Q:	Anh học trường Đại Học?
10.	S:	Maria nói tiếng Tây Ban Nha .
		maria noy² tyehng² tay¹ ban¹ nha¹
		"Maria speaks Spanish."
	Q:	Maria nói tiếng?
11.	S:	Dạo này việc buôn bán của tôi rất tốt đẹp .
		yaw ⁶ năy ⁵ vyehk ⁶ bwohn ¹ ban ¹ koouh ⁴ tohy ¹ rut ² toht ² dep ⁶
		"My business has been very good lately."
	Q:	Dạo này việc buôn bán của ông?
12.	S:	Tôi mở cái điện thoại này bằng cách dùng mật mã .
		tohy¹ muh⁴ kie² dyehn⁶ thwie⁶ năy⁵ băng⁵ kặch² yoongm⁵ mut⁶ ma³
		"I open this phone by using a password."
	Q:	Anh mở cái điện thoại này?
ALIE		·
ALID		

AUDIO 3

1.

B. Final intonations

Bọn trẻ mới ăn cơm xong.

Listen to the different final intonations of the following sentences and relate to the possible attitudes or emotions expressed along with them, given in parentheses.

	bahn ⁶ tre ⁴ muhy ² ăn ¹ kuhm ¹ sahngm ¹		
	"The kids have just eaten."		
	a. \leftrightarrow (No emotion) b. \searrow (Emphatic)		
2.	Ai đang hút bụi trong phòng ngủ?		
	ie¹ dang¹ hoot² booy⁵ trahngm¹ fahngm⁵ ngoo⁴		
	"Who is vacuuming in the bedroom?"		
	a. \leftrightarrow (No emotion) b. \nearrow (Inquisitive)	c.	` (Emphatic)

Ngày mai tôi mới cắt cỏ. 3. $ng\ddot{a}y^5$ mie^1 $tohy^1$ $muhy^2$ $k\ddot{a}t^2$ kah^4 "I will not cut the grass until tomorrow." a. \leftrightarrow (No emotion) b. \searrow (Emphatic) Cô quét nhà mất bao lâu?

koh¹ kwet² nha⁵ mut² baw¹ lohw¹

"How long did it take you to sweep the floors?"

- a. \leftrightarrow (*No emotion*) b. \nearrow (*Inquisitive*)

Ai sẽ lau chùi bàn ghế?

ie¹ she⁴ lăw¹ chooy⁵ ban⁵ geh²

"Who will be dusting off the furniture?"

- a. \leftrightarrow (No emotion)
- b. ∧ (Inquisitive) c. ∨ (Emphatic)

C. Telling time

Refer to the Notes on Grammar section to do this exercise. Write out the times indicated in digits. Where there are (a) and (b), the time are to be written in two ways.



Model 7:15 a.m. Bảy giờ mười lăm (phút) sáng. 12:05 p.m. (a) 2. 6:43 a.m. (b) 8:30 p.m. (a) 3. (b) 9:45 p.m. (a) 4. (b) 5. 11:28 p.m.

AUDIO 4

6.

Q:

A:

D. Talking about dates

Listen to the questions and fill in the blanks in the answers with relevant information.

- Hôm nay là thứ mấy? 1. Q: $hohm^1 n \ddot{a} y^1 l a^5 t h \ddot{u}^2 m a y^2$ "What day is it today?" Hôm nay là _____ A: 2. Hôm qua là ngày tháng mấy? Q: hohm¹ kwa¹ la⁵ ngăy⁵ thang² may² "What was the date yesterday?" Hôm qua là ngày _____ A: tháng _____ 3. Ngày mai là ngày mấy? Q: $ngay^5 mie^1 la^5 ngay^5 may^2$ "What day of the month is it tomorrow?" A: Ngày mai là ngày _____ 4. Q: Một tuần có mấy ngày? moht⁶ twun⁵ kah² may² ngăy⁵ "How many days are there in a week? Một tuần có ______ ngày. A: 5. Q: Một năm có bao nhiều tháng? moht⁶ năm¹ kah² baw¹ nhyehw¹ thang² "How many months are there in a year?" Môt năm có _____ A: _ tháng.
- Mùa này là mùa gi2? 7. Q: moouh⁵ năy⁵ la⁵ moouh⁵ yee⁵ "What season is it now?" Mùa này là mùa ____ A:

Tháng này là tháng _____

Tháng này là tháng mấy?

 $thang^2 n \ddot{a} y^5 l a^5 thang^2 m a y^2$ "What month is it now?"

Anh/Chi sinh năm nào? 8. Q: ănh¹/chee⁶ sheenh¹ năm¹ naw⁵ "What year were you born in?" Tôi sinh năm ___ A: 9. Khi nào là sinh nhật của anh/chi? Q: khee¹ naw⁵ la⁵ sheenh¹ nhut⁶ koouh⁴ ănh¹/chee⁶ "When is your birthday?" Sinh nhật của tôi là ngày _____ A: tháng _____ 10. **Q**: Anh/chi tuổi con gì? ănh¹/chee⁶ twohy⁴ kahn¹ yee⁵

"What zodiac animal are you?"

Tôi tuổi con ____

IV. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

A:

A. Telling time

- The terms needed for telling time are **giò** $[yuh^5]$ ("hour"), **phút** $[foot^2]$ ("minute") and **giây** $[yay^1]$ ("second"). To ask about the time, one says, "Mấy giờ rồi?" $[may^2 yuh^5 rohy^5]$ (literally, "what time (is it) already?").
- The times of the day used with the time of the clock are **sáng** [shang²] ("morning," from 12:01 a.m. to 10:59 a.m.), **trua** $[tr\check{u}uh^{1}]$ ("noon/early afternoon," from 11:00 a.m. to 1:59 p.m.), **chiều** [*chyehw*⁵] ("late afternoon," from 2:00 p.m. to 6:59 p.m.), **tối** [*tohy*²] ("evening," from 7:00 p.m. to 9:59 p.m.) and $\mathbf{d\hat{e}m}$ [dehm¹] ("night," from 10:00 p.m. to 12:00 a.m.).
- The classifier **buổi** [$bwohy^4$] ("time of day") is used before the relevant noun for specific reference: **buổi sáng** [bwohy⁴ shang²] ("morning"), **buổi trưa** [bwohy⁴ trǔuh¹] ("early afternoon"), **buổi chiều** [bwohy⁴ chyehw⁵] ("late afternoon"), **buổi tối** [bwohy⁴ tohy²] ("evening"). The classifier **ban** $\lceil ban^1 \rceil$ is used for "night": **ban đêm** $\lceil ban^1 dehm^1 \rceil$.
- An exact time (on the dot) such as 9:00 a.m. is said as **chín giờ sáng**.
- A time with minutes such as 2:15 p.m. is said as hai giờ mười lăm phút chiều [hie¹ yuh⁵ $m\ddot{u}uhy^5 l\ddot{a}m^1 foot^2 chyehw^5$] (the word **phút** is usually omitted in spoken language).
- The word **rw\tilde{o}i** [$r\check{u}uhy^3$] ("half of one") can be colloquially used instead of **30 phút** ("30 minutes"). Thus, 7:30 is **bảy giờ ba mươi phút** $[b \breve{a} y^4 y u h^5 b a^1 m \breve{u} u h y^1 foot^2]$ or **bảy giờ rưỡi** $[b \ddot{a} y^4 y u h^5 r \ddot{u} u h y^3].$
- There are two ways to indicate the time with the minutes beyond 30. The first way is the common way like above, for example, 4:35 is said as **bốn giờ ba mươi lăm** [bohn² yuh⁵ ba¹ $m\ddot{u}uhy^1 l\ddot{a}m^1$]. The second way is to go up to the next hour and indicate the missing minutes before that time: **năm giờ kém hai mươi lăm** $[năm^1 yuh^5 kem^2 hie^1 mǔuhy^1 lăm^1]$ ("five hours minus twenty-five").

- Mười hai giờ trưa $[m \ddot{u} u h y^5 hie^1 y u h^5 tr \ddot{u} u h^1]$ is used for "noon" and nửa đêm $[n \ddot{u} u h^4]$ *dehm*¹] is used for "midnight."
- **Giò** $[vuh^5]$ or **tiếng** $[tyehng^2]$ is used to indicate how many hours it takes to do something: **Tôi cắt cỏ mất một tiếng rưỡi** [tohy¹ kặt² kah⁴ mut² moht⁶ tyehng² rǔuhy³] ("It took me one and a half hours to cut the grass.").

B. Time and dates

- The following terms are used for time in general: $\operatorname{ng\grave{a}y} \lceil ng\check{a}y^5 \rceil$ ("day"), $\operatorname{tu\grave{a}n} \lceil twun^5 \rceil$ ("week"), tháng [thang²] ("month"), năm [năm¹] ("year"). Ban ngày [ban¹ ngăy⁵] means "daytime" and **ban đêm** [ban¹ dehm¹] means "nighttime."
- Time references for the past, the present and the future are as follows (notice the alternation between **này** $\lceil n \ddot{a} y^5 \rceil$ and **nay** $\lceil n \ddot{a} y^1 \rceil$ in some expressions):

	Day	Week	Month	Year
	hôm qua	tuần trước	tháng trước	năm trước
PAST	hohm¹ kwa¹	twun ⁵ trŭuhk ²	thang² trŭuhk²	năm¹ trŭuhk¹
	"yesterday"	"last week"	"last month"	"last year"
	hôm nay	tuần này	tháng này	năm nay
PRESENT	hohm¹ năy¹	twun ⁵ năy ⁵	thang² năy⁵	năm¹ năy¹
	"today"	"this week"	"this month"	"this year"
	ngày mai	tuần sau	tháng sau	năm sau
FUTURE	ngăy ⁵ mie ¹	twun ⁵ shăw ¹	thang² shăw¹	năm¹ shăw¹
	"tomorrow"	"next week"	"next month"	"next year"

- The names of the days of the week are **thứ Hai** $[th\check{u}^2 hie^1]$ ("Monday," literally "the second day")), **thứ Ba** [$th\check{u}^2 ba^1$] ("Tuesday"), **thứ Tư** [$th\check{u}^2 t\check{u}^1$] ("Wednesday"), **thứ Năm** [$th\check{u}^2$ $n\breve{a}m^1$] ("Thursday"), **thứ Sáu** [$th\breve{u}^2$ $sh\breve{a}w^2$] ("Friday"), **thứ Bảy** [$th\breve{u}^2$ $b\breve{a}y^4$] ("Saturday") and **Chủ nhật** $[choo^4 nhut^6]$ ("Sunday," literally "the day of the Lord"). Calendars in Vietnam have thứ Hai listed first, as opposed to Sunday in the English speaking world.
- Numbers are also used to name the months in Vietnamese: **tháng Một** [$thang^2 moht^6$] ("January"), tháng Hai [thang² hie¹] ("February"), tháng Ba [thang² ba¹] ("March"), tháng **Tu** [thang² tŭ¹] ("April"), **tháng Năm** [thang² năm¹] ("May"), **tháng Sáu** [thang² shăw²] ("June"), tháng Bảy [thang² băy⁴] ("July"), tháng Tám [thang² tam²] ("August"), tháng Chín [thang² cheen²] "September"), tháng Mười [thang² mữuhy⁵] ("October"), tháng **Mười một** [thang² mữuhy⁵ moht6] ("November") and **tháng Mười hai** [thang² mữuhy⁵ hie¹] ("December").
- A complete date in Vietnamese is in the following order: the day of the week, the day of the month, the month, and finally the year. For example, "Monday, February 22, 2021" is said as Thứ Hai, ngày hai mươi hai, tháng hai, năm hai ngàn không trăm hai mươi mốt [thŭ² hie¹ ngăy⁵ hie¹ mŭuhy¹ hie¹ thang² hie¹ năm¹ hie¹ ngan⁵ khohngm¹ trăm¹ hie¹ mŭuhy¹ $moht^2$] and written in digits as 22/02/2021.

• **Mấy** [may²] means "how many" and is usually used in a question to which the answer is expected to contain a number less than 10. **Bao nhiêu** [baw¹ nhyehw¹] means both "how many" and "how much." It is used to mean "how many" when the answer is expected to contain a number greater than 10.

Một tuần có **mấy** ngày? moht⁶ twun⁵ kah² may² ngăy⁵ "How many days are there in a week?"

Một tháng có **bao nhiều** ngày? moht⁶ thang² kah² baw¹ nhyehw¹ ngăy⁵ "How many days are there in a month?"

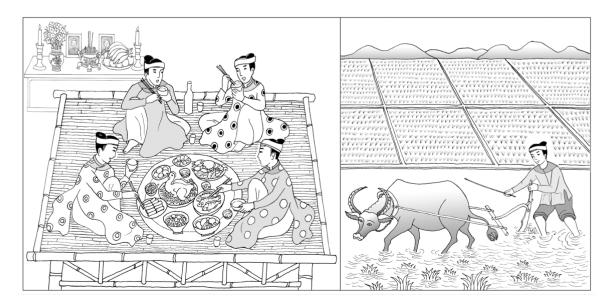
V. PROVERB

AUDIO 5

ĐƯỢC BỮA GIỖ, LỖ BUỔI CÀY.

dŭuhk⁶ bŭuh³ yoh³ loh³ bwohy⁴ kăy⁵

- **Literal meaning:** Going to a death anniversary banquet means losing a plowing day.
- Figurative meaning: You can't have your cake and eat it, too.
- **Cultural implication:** In the countryside, people's lives seem to revolve around the rice fields, where they do hard labor to earn their living. Missing a day's work for any other activities means a loss to the peasants.



VI. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TỪ - NOUNS

ban đêm [ban¹ dehm¹] night; nighttime **ban ngày** $\lceil ban^1 ng \breve{a} v^5 \rceil$ day; daytime **bữa ăn sáng** [bữuh³ ăn¹ shang²] breakfast **bữa ăn tối** $[b\bar{u}uh^3 \bar{a}n^1 tohv^2]$ dinner **bữa ăn trưa** [*bŭuh*³ *ăn*¹ *trŭuh*¹] lunch **buổi chiều** [*bwohy*⁴ *chyehw*⁵] afternoon **buổi sáng** [bwohy⁴ shang²] morning **buổi tối** [*bwohy*⁴ *tohy*²] evening **buổi trưa** [*bwohy*⁴ *trŭuh*¹] early afternoon **giâv** [vav¹] second **giò** [vuh⁵] hour; o'clock **mùa** [moouh⁵] season **mùa đông** [moouh⁵ dohngm¹] winter **mùa hè/ha** [$moouh^5 he^5/ha^6$] summer **mùa thu** [moouh⁵ thoo¹] autumn **mùa xuân** [moouh⁵ swun¹] spring **năm** $\lceil n \tilde{a} m^1 \rceil$ year **ngày** $[ng \ddot{a} y^5]$ day **ngày tháng** $[ng\ddot{a}y^5 thang^2]$ date **phút** [foot²] minute **sinh nhật** [sheenh¹ nhưt⁶] birthday tháng [thang²] month **thời gian** [thuhy⁵ yan¹] time **tuần (lễ)** [twun⁵ leh³] week **tuổi** [twohy⁴] age

ĐÔNG TỪ - VERBS

cao râu [kaw⁶ rohw¹] to shave (beard) **cắt cỏ** $[kat^2 kah^4]$ to cut the grass **đánh răng** [dănh² răng¹] to brush one's teeth $\mathbf{d\hat{a}v} [vav^6]$ to get up **đi làm** $\lceil dee^1 \ lam^5 \rceil$ to go to work **đi ngủ** $[dee^1 ngoo^4]$ to go to bed **don dep** $\lceil vahn^6 vep^6 \rceil$ to clean up **giăt** $\lceil v \breve{a} t^6 \rceil$ to wash (clothes) **hút bui** $\lceil hoot^2 boov^5 \rceil$ to vacuum **làm việc** [lam⁵ vyehk⁶] to work **lau chùi** [*lăw*¹ *chooy*⁵] to clean; to dust **nấu ăn** $\lceil nohw^2 \, \breve{a}n^1 \rceil$ to cook **nghỉ** [*nghee*⁴] to rest, to break; to be off **quét nhà** $\lceil kwet^2 nha^5 \rceil$ to sweep the floors **rửa chén** $\lceil r \ddot{u} u h^4 chen^2 \rceil$ to wash dishes thay quần áo $[th \ddot{a}y^1 kwun^5 aw^2]$ to get dressed **thức giấc** [$th \tilde{u} k^2 y u k^2$] to wake up **trang điểm** [trang¹ dyehm⁴] to put on make up $\mathbf{\dot{u}i} [ooy^4]$ to iron

TRANG TÙ - ADVERBS

sóm [shuhm²] early **trễ** [*treh*³] late $m\tilde{a}y/bao nhiều [may^2/baw^1 nhyehw^1]$ how many/how much











CHAPTER 7

Useful Words, Phrases and Sentences

Going Places



I. USEFUL WORDS, PHRASES AND SENTENCES Greetings

Thus far in the book, the reader has been introduced to Vietnamese through its sound system and grammatical structure. We now can get ready to use the language more effectively by learning phrases and sentences on the pragmatic level for everyday communication. To begin, let's talk about greetings. The word **chào** [chaw⁵] means both "hello" and "goodbye." However, it is never used alone, but rather with other addressing terms such as a name, **chào Tuấn** [chaw⁵ twun²]! ("hello/goodbye, Tuấn"), a personal pronoun, **chào ông** [chaw⁵ ohngm¹] ("hello/goodbye, sir"), a kinship term, **chào mẹ** [chaw⁵ me⁵] ("hello/goodbye, Mom") or a professional title, **chào giáo sư** [chaw⁵ yaw² shǔ¹] ("hello/goodbye, professor").

In Vietnam, people don't typically follow their greetings with a perfunctory "how are you?" as in English, especially with someone they see on a daily basis. Instead, they can continue with some small talk sentences such as **Cô đi đâu vậy?** [koh¹ dee¹ dohw¹ vay⁶] ("Where are you going?") or **Trời nóng quá, phải không?** [truhy⁵ nahngm² kwa² fie⁴ khohngm¹] ("It's pretty warm, isn't it?"). Speakers do, however, say things akin to a "how are you?" with a person they have not seen for a while, for example, **Dạo này ông ra sao?** [yaw⁶ nǎy⁵ ohngm¹ ra¹ shaw¹] ("How have you been?"), or **Chị mạnh giỏi chứ?** [chee⁶ mǎnh⁶ yoy⁴ chǔ²] ("You're doing well, are you?"). On the other hand, you may hear some Vietnamese speakers, mostly those who live outside of Vietnam, use the question **Anh có khoẻ không?** [ǎnh¹ kah² khwe⁴ khohngm¹] (literally, "Are you well/healthy?"). This question might not work well with everyone, especially someone with on-going health problems. Even a direct translation of "How are you today?" which is **Hôm nay anh thế** nào? [hohm¹ nǎy¹ ǎnh¹ theh² naw⁵] would more likely be asked by a doctor to his or her patient.

On the politeness side, the phrase $xin l\tilde{o}i [seen^1 lohy^3]$ ("pardon, excuse me, I'm sorry"), preferably followed by one of the terms listed above used with **chào**, can be used before a question or a

request, **Xin lỗi cô, đường này tên là gì?** [seen¹ lohy³ koh¹ dǔuhng⁵ nǎy⁵ tehn¹ la⁵ yee⁵] ("Pardon, Miss, what's the name of this street?"). If the sentence already contains a personal pronoun or a title, the speaker can skip it after **xin lỗi** to avoid being repetitive, **Xin lỗi, ông nói châm lai môt chút được không?** [seen¹ lohy³ ohngm¹ noy² chum⁶ lie⁶ moht⁶ choot² dǔuhk⁶ khohngm¹] ("I'm sorry, but could you speak a little more slowly?").

The phrase $lam on [lam^5 uhn^1]$ (literally, "do a favor") is as useful as the English "if you please" in most situations. It can be used before a verb to turn the whole sentence into a polite request, Làm ơn chỉ cho tôi đường đến bưu điện gần nhất [lam⁵ uhn¹ chee⁴ chah¹ tohy¹ dŭuhng⁵ dehn² bŭw¹ dyehn6 gun5 nhut²] ("Please show me the way to the nearest post office") or Làm on **cho tôi biết mấy giờ rồi** [lam⁵ uhn¹ chah¹ tohy¹ byeht² may² yuh⁵ rohy⁵] ("Please tell me what time it is").

The phrase **cảm ơn** $\lceil kam^4 uhn^1 \rceil$ (also "**cám ơn**" $\lceil kam^2 uhn^1 \rceil$, or "thank you") literally means "I feel your favor." It can be used alone, but always better if followed by a name, cam on Hùng [kam⁴ uhn¹ hoongm⁵] "Thank you, Hung," a personal pronoun, **cảm ơn chi** [kam⁴ uhn¹ chee⁶] "Thank you, sister," or a title, **cảm ơn bác sĩ** $\lceil kam^4 uhn^1 bak^2 shee^3 \rceil$ "Thank you, doctor," etc. To reply to a thank-you, one usually says **Không có chi** [khohngm¹ kah² chee¹] (literally, "There is nothing").

Note that **xin lỗi** [seen¹ lohy³] is not to be used if you say "I'm sorry" regarding someone's unfortunate situation, for this phrase literally means "I beg your pardon." In such situation, there are different ways to express your feeling. If it is a mild misfortune, you can just say $\hat{\mathbf{0}}$, \mathbf{vay} $\hat{\mathbf{a}}$? $[oh^5]$ $vay^6 a^5$] ("Oh, really?"), or **Tôi quá!** [$tohy^6 kwa^2$] ("What a pity!") or **Buồn quá** [$bwohn^5 kwa^2$] ("How sad!"), with a sympathetic tone of voice. To share your condolences for someone's loss, you can say **Xin chia buồn với ông/bà/anh/chi** [seen¹ cheeuh¹ bwohn⁵ vuhy² ohngm¹ ba⁵ ănh¹ *chee*⁶] ("I would like to share the sorrow with you").

To start a conversation with a stranger, especially someone of advanced age, the speaker can use the particle **thwa** $[th\check{u}uh^{1}]$ ("literally, "to speak respectfully"), followed by a personal pronoun or a title: **Thưa bà, thư viện thành phố nằm ở đâu?** [thữuh¹ ba⁵ thữ¹ vyehn⁶ thănh⁵ foh² năm⁵ $uh^4 dohw^1$ ("Ma'am, where is the city library?").

The respectful particle **da** $[ya^5]$ can be used before an answer when speaking to a superior or even a peer:

```
Q: Đến ngã tư trước mặt tôi queo trái, phải không?
       dehn<sup>2</sup> nga<sup>3</sup> tŭ<sup>1</sup> trŭuhk<sup>2</sup> măt<sup>6</sup> tohy<sup>1</sup> kwew<sup>6</sup> trie<sup>2</sup> fie<sup>4</sup> khohngm<sup>1</sup>
       "I will make a left turn at the next intersection, right?"
```

```
A: Da, đúng.
     ya<sup>6</sup> doongm<sup>2</sup>
      "Yes, that's correct."
```

In the central and southern dialects, \mathbf{da} also means a respectful "yes," which is $\mathbf{vang} [vung^1]$ (literally "to obey") in most northern dialects. Thus, to say "yes" respectfully, in the northern dialects, people say **da** vâng [$ya^6 vung^1$], whereas it suffices to say **da** if you speak a central or southern dialect. To say "yes" informally (thus lacking respect), one says $\mathbf{\dot{w}} \, [\, \breve{u}^5 \,]$ (northern dialects) or $\mathbf{\dot{o}}$ $[uh^5]$ (central and southern dialects).

A language always goes hand in hand with the culture behind it. The reader might have noticed, from a previous chapter, the way someone approaches someone else offering help, saying **Ông cần gì ą?** [ohngm¹ kun⁵ yee⁵ a^6] ("What do you need?"), which focuses on the interlocuter. In English, in the same situation, one would say, "How can I help you?" or "What can I do for you?," which focuses on the speaker's point of view.

If someone shows up at your door unannounced, you would say in surprise, "What are you doing here?," but a direct translation of this sentence into Vietnamese would sound rude. Instead, a Vietnamese speaker would say something like **Anh đến có chuyện gì không?** [ănh¹ dehn² kah² chwyehn6 yee5 khohngm¹] (roughly "what did you come here for?"). In the same situation, while you could say in English, "I didn't expect you," a direct translation into Vietnamese would not be as polite as saying **Anh đến bất ngờ quá!** $[\check{a}nh^1 dehn^2 but^2 nguh^5 kwa^2]$ ("You came quite unexpectedly!").

To show your concern about someone's well-being (in which case you would say "Are you OK?" in English), you can ask, **Bà có sao không?** [ba⁵ kah² shaw¹ khohngm¹] (literally, "Is anything the matter with you?"). If the person being asked is OK, he or she would say, **Tôi không sao** \mathbf{ca} [tohy¹ khohngm¹ shaw¹ ka⁴]. The phrase **Không sao đâu!** [khohngm¹ shaw¹ dohw¹] usually means "No worries" or "That's OK."

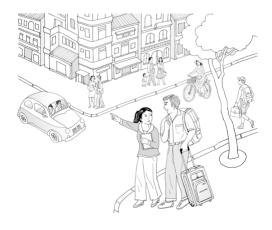
Finally, to mean "OK" in general, you can **say Được** $[d\check{u}uhk^6]$ or **Được rồi** $[d\check{u}uhk^5 rohy^5]$. For "It's not OK," just add the negative adverb to it, **Không được** [khohngm¹ dữuhk 6].

II. PRACTICE

AUDIO 1

A. Asking for directions

Listen to the following dialog and repeat after the speakers.



Du khách Chào cô! Cô làm ơn chỉ đường cho tôi đến thương xá Sài Gòn.

chaw⁵ koh¹ // koh¹ lam⁵ uhn¹ chee⁴ dŭuhng⁵ chah¹ tohy¹ dehn² thŭuhng¹

sa² sie⁵ gahn⁵

Tourist Hello, Miss. Please show me the way to Saigon shopping mall.

Cô gái Chào ông! Ông đi thẳng đến ngã tư trước mặt rồi queo trái. Thương xá

nằm cách đó khoảng một trăm mét, bên tay phải.

chaw⁵ ohngm¹// ohngm¹ dee¹ thăng⁴ dehn² nga³ tŭ¹ trŭuhk² măt⁶ rohy⁵ kwew⁶ trie² // thŭuhng¹ sa² năm⁵ kặch² dah² khwang⁴ moht⁶ trăm¹

met²

Hello, sir! You go straight to the intersection ahead and turn left. The mall Young woman

is located about 100 meters away, on the right-hand side.

Du khách Gần đó có rap chiếu phim nào không, cô?

gun⁵ dah² kah² rap⁶ chyehw² feem¹ naw⁵ khohngm¹ koh¹

Tourist Is there any movie theater nearby?

Cô gái Dạ, có. Rạp Rex nằm đối diện thương xá. Chung quanh thương xá còn có

nhiều tiệm ăn ngon lắm!

ya⁶ kah² // rap⁶ rex năm⁵ dohy² yehn⁶ thǔuhng¹ sa² // choongm¹ kwănh¹ thŭuhng¹ sa² kahn⁵ kah² nhyehw⁵ tyehm⁶ ăn¹ ngahn¹ lăm²

Young woman Yes. The Rex Theater is opposite the mall. Around the mall there are also

several good restaurants.

Du khách Cám ơn cô nhiều nhé!

kam² uhn¹ koh¹ nhyehw⁵ nhe²

Tourist Thank you so much!

Cô gái Da, không có chi. Ông nói tiếng Việt giỏi quá!

ya⁵ khohngm¹ kah² chee¹ // ohngm¹ noy² tyehng² vyeht⁶ yahy⁴ kwa²

You're welcome. You speak Vietnamese quite well! Young woman

AUDIO 2

B. Vocabulary

Listen to the following sentences and fill in the blanks with the missing words.



	băng qua đường phi trường đèn giao thông thông hành
góc	đường đi bộ cảnh sát ngân hàng khách sạn bùng binh
1.	Quốc Gia nằm trên đường Nguyễn Du, phải không, cô? ngun¹ hang⁵ kwohk² ya¹ năm⁵ trehn¹ dŭuhng⁵ ngwyehn³ yoo¹ fie⁴ khohngm¹ koh¹ The National Bank is on Nguyen Du street, isn't it, Miss?
2.	$ \mathring{O}$ trước mặt có một tiệm hoa lớn. $ uh^4 gahkp^2 dŭuhng^5 tr uhk^2 măt^6 kah^2 moht^6 tyehm^6 hwa^1 luhn^2 $ There is a big flower shop at the street corner ahead.
3.	Ông có thấy cái đằng kia không? Đó là ngã sáu Nguyễn Tri Phương. ohngm¹ kah² thay² kie² boongm⁵ beenh¹ dăng⁵ keeuh¹ khohngm¹ // dah² la⁵ ngơ shăw² ngwyehn³ tree¹ fũuhng¹ Do you see the roundabout over there? It's the Nguyen Tri Phuong six-way intersection
4.	Cô nên rất cẩn thận khi ở đây koh^1 $nehn^1$ rut^2 kun^4 $thun^6$ $khee^1$ $băng^1$ kwa^1 $dŭuhng^5$ uh^4 day^1 You should be very careful when crossing the streets here.
5.	Từ đến công viên lái xe mất bao lâu? tử 5 khặch² shan6 dehn² kohngm¹ vyehn¹ lie² se¹ mut² baw¹ lohw¹ How long does it take to drive from the hotel to the park?
6.	Đến chỗ chị quẹo ngược lại nhé. $dehn^2 \ choh^3 \ den^5 \ yaw^1 \ thohngm^1 \ chee^6 \ kwew^6 \ ng \ uuhk^6 \ lie^6 \ nhe^2$ Make a U-turn at the traffic light.
7.	Tôi phải hay đi xe buýt để đến chợ Bến Thành? $tohy^1 fie^4 dee^1 boh^6 hăy^1 dee^1 se^1 bweet^2 deh^4 dehn^2 chuh^6 behn^2 thănh^5$ Do I walk or take a bus to get to Ben Thanh Market?
8.	Bà có thể đón tắc-xi ngay tại $ba^5 kah^2 theh^4 dahn^2 tăk^2 see^1 ngăy^1 tie^6 fee^1 trǔuhng^5$ You can take a taxi right at the airport.
9.	Nếu lạc đường, chị có thể hỏi những viên giao thông kia. nehw² lak⁶ dŭuhng⁵ chee⁶ kah² theh⁴ hoy⁴ nhŭng⁴ vyehn¹ kănh⁴ shat² yaw¹ thohngm keeuh¹ If lost, you can ask those traffic officers.

10. Làm ơn cho tôi xem ______ và giấy nhập cảnh của anh. lam⁵ uhn¹ chah¹ tohy¹ sem¹ thohngm¹ hănh⁵ va⁵ yay² nhup⁶ kănh⁴ koouh⁴ ănh¹ Please show me your passport and visa.

AUDIO 3

C. Types of questions

Listen to the answers and the suggested questions that follow. Circle the appropriate question for each of them. Refer to the Notes on Grammar section for information.

- Tiệm sách nằm giữa tiệm quần áo và tiệm kem. tyehm⁶ shăch² năm⁵ yŭuh³ tyehm⁶ kwun⁵ aw² va⁵ tyehm⁶ kem¹ The bookstore is located between a clothing shop and an ice cream shop.
 - Đây là tiệm sách hay thư viện? day¹ la⁵ tyehm⁶ shăch² hăy¹ thŭ¹ vyehn⁶ Is this a bookstore or a library?
 - Tiêm sách nằm ở đâu? b. tvehm⁶ shăch² năm⁵ uh⁴ dohw¹ Where is the bookstore located?
 - Đây là một tiệm sách à? c. day¹ la⁵ moht⁶ tyehm⁶ shăch² a⁵ This is a bookstore, isn't it?
- Da, có. Quầy đổi ngoại tệ nằm gần cửa ra vào. ya⁶ kah² // kway⁵ dohy⁴ ngwie⁶ teh⁶ năm⁵ gun⁵ kŭuh⁴ ra¹ vaw⁵ Yes, there is. The foreign currency exchange counter is near the entrance.
 - Xin lỗi cô, quầy đổi ngoại tệ ở đâu? seen¹ lohy⁴ koh¹ kway⁵ dohy⁴ ngwie⁶ teh⁶ uh⁴ dohw¹ Excuse me, Miss, where is the foreign currency exchange counter?
 - b. Xin lỗi cô, ở đây có quầy đổi ngoại tệ nào không? seen¹ lohy³ koh¹ uh⁴ day¹ kah² kway⁵ dohy⁴ ngwie⁶ teh⁶ naw⁵ khohngm¹ Excuse me, Miss, is there any foreign currency exchange counter here?
 - c. Xin lỗi cô, quây đổi ngoại tệ ở tầng này hay tầng dưới? seen¹ lohy³ koh¹ kway⁵ dohy⁴ ngwie⁶ teh⁶ uh⁴ tung⁵ năy⁵ hăy¹ uh⁴ tung⁵ yŭuhy² Excuse me, Miss, is the foreign currency exchange counter on this floor or downstairs?
- 3. Không phải. Xe buýt này đi chợ Bến Thành. khohngm¹ fie⁴ // se¹ bweet² năy⁵ dee¹ chuh⁶ behn² thănh⁵ No, it's not. This bus goes to Ben Thanh market.
 - Anh ơi, xe buýt này đi đâu? ănh¹ uhy¹ se¹ bweet² năy⁵ dee¹ dohw¹ Hey, brother. Where does this bus go?

- Anh ơi, xe buýt này có đi đến nhà thờ Đức Bà không? b. ănh¹ uhy¹ se¹ bweet² năy⁵ kah² dee¹ dehn² nha⁵ thuh⁵ dŭk² ba⁵ khohngm¹ Hey, brother. Does this bus go to the Notre-Dame Cathedral?
- Anh ơi, xe buýt này đi nhà thờ Đức Bà, phải không? c. ănh¹ uhy¹ se¹ bweet² năy⁵ dee¹ nha⁵ thuh⁵ dŭk² ba⁵ fie⁴ khohngm¹ Hey, brother. This bus goes to the Notre-Dame Cathedral, is it right?
- Vì hôm nay là Tết, các máy rút tiền không hoạt động. 4. vee⁵ hohm¹ năy¹ la⁵ teht² kak² măy² root² tyehn⁵ khohngm¹ hwat⁶ dohngm⁶ Because of the Lunar New Year holidays, all the ATMs are not in service.
 - Tại sao hôm nay anh không rút tiền trong máy được? tie⁶ shaw¹ hohm¹ năy¹ ănh¹ khohngm¹ root² tyehn⁵ trahngm¹ măy² dŭuhk⁶ Why can't you withdraw money from the ATMs today?
 - Máy rút tiền của ngân hàng nào gần đây nhất? b. măy² root² tyehn² koouh⁴ ngun¹ hang⁵ naw⁵ gun⁵ day¹ nhut² Which bank ATM is the nearest around here?
 - Anh có biết máy rút tiền đâu không? c. ănh¹ kah² byeht² măy² root² tyehn⁵ uh⁴ dohw¹ khohngm¹ Do you know where I can find an ATM?
- 5. Lối này là lối vào khu vực các chuyến bay đến. lohy² năy⁵ la⁵ lohy² vaw⁵ khoo¹ vŭk⁶ kak² chwyehn² băy¹ dehn² This is the way to the arrival area.
 - Lối này đi vào khu vực các chuyến bay đến à? lohy² năy⁵ dee¹ vaw⁵ khoo¹ vŭk⁶ kak² chwyehn² băy¹ dehn² a⁵ Is this the way to the arrival area?
 - Lối này là lối vào khu vực các chuyến bay đi hay các chuyến bay đến? b. lohy² năy⁵ la⁵ lohy² vaw⁵ khoo¹ vŭk6 kak² chwyehn² băy¹ dee¹ hăy¹ kak² chwyehn² băy¹ dehn²
 - Is this the way to the departure or arrival area?
 - Đây có phải là lối vào khu vực các chuyến bay đến không? day¹ kah² fie⁴ la⁵ lohy² vaw⁵ khoo¹ vŭk⁶ kak² chwyehn² băy¹ dehn² khohngm¹ Is this the way to the arrival area?

D. Imperative sentences

Fill in the blanks in the following commands with the appropriate particles from the list, according to the suggestions in parentheses. Refer to the Notes on Grammar section for the usage of the particles.

đi	nhé	giùm	đừng	xin	mời	cứ	hãy
dee^1	nhe^2	yoom ⁵	dŭng⁵	seen¹	muhy⁵	$kreve{u}^2$	hăy³

1.	quên trả phòng trước 10 giờ (Negative; friendly urge)
	kwehn¹ tra⁴ fahngm⁵ trŭuhk² mŭuhy⁵ yuh⁵
	Don't forget to check out by 10 o'clock, OK?
2.	chahn ⁶ hang ³ hang ⁵ khohngm ¹ koouh ⁴ choongm ² tohy ¹ chah ¹ chwyehn ² yoo ¹
	leech ⁶ koouh ⁴ kwee ² vee ⁶
	Please choose our airline for your trip.
3.	Cô tìm vài địa điểm du lịch tôi! (Asking for help; mild urge)
	koh¹ teem⁵ vie⁵ deeuh6 dyehm⁴ yoo¹ leech6 tohy¹
	Please go ahead and help me find a couple of tourist attractions.
4.	dùng điện thoại cầm tay trong phòng này. (Polite; negative)
	yoongm ⁵ dyehn ⁶ thwie ⁶ kum ⁵ tay ¹ trahngm ¹ fahngm ⁵ năy ⁵
	Please do not use your cell phone in this room.
5.	quý vị qua phòng chờ cho chuyến bay kế tiếp. (<i>Polite; invitation</i>)
	kwee² vee6 kwa¹ fahngm⁵ chuh⁵ chah¹ chwyehn² băy¹ keh² tyehp²
_	Please walk over to the lounge for the next flight.
6.	Các bạn đi ngoạn cảnh trước! (Encouragement; mild urge)
	kak² ban ⁶ dee¹ ngwan ⁶ kănh⁴ trŭuhk²
	Just go ahead and go sight-seeing first.
7.	mọi người tự nhiên lấy thức ăn trên bàn! (Polite; encouragement;
	friendly urge)
	$_{\rm moy^6}$ ngŭuhy 5 $_{\rm th^6}$ nhyehn 1 lay 2 thŭk 2 ăn 1 trehn 1 ban 5
	Everyone, please help yourselves to the food on the table.
8.	Làm ơn mua chúng tôi hai vé xe đò đi Vũng Tàu! (Asking for help; friendly urge)
	lam ⁵ uhn ¹ moouh ¹ choongm ² tohy ¹ hie ¹ ve ² se ¹ dah ⁵ dee ¹ voongm ³ tăw ⁵
	Could you do us a favor by purchasing two bus tickets to Vung Tau?

III. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

A. Types of questions

a. Specific questions: This type of question includes an interrogative pronoun, adjective or adverb, equivalent to the Wh-words in English.

Làm sao chúng ta đến phi trường đúng giờ? lam⁵ shaw¹ choongm² ta¹ dehn² fee¹ trŭuhng⁵ doongm² yuh⁵ "How do we get to the airport on time?"

Cô sẽ đi thăm Viện Bảo Tàng Quốc Gia với ai? koh¹ she³ dee¹ thăm¹ vyehn⁶ baw⁴ tang⁵ kwohk² ya¹ vuhy² ie¹ "Who will you go visit the National Museum with?"

b. Yes/No questions: Briefly discussed in Chapter 4, this type of question, as its name indicates, asks for a "yes" or a "no." A full question of such type includes the words có... hay không (literally, "yes or no"), as in Các anh có mang theo giấy nhập cảnh hay **không?** [kak¹ ănh¹ chee⁶ kah² mang¹ thew¹ yay² nhup⁶ kănh⁴ hăy¹ khohngm¹] "Did you guys bring your visa with you (or not)?" More often than not, the conjunction **hay** $\lceil h \ddot{a} y^1 \rceil$ ("or") is omitted in fast speech: Các anh có mang theo giấy nhập cảnh không?

Answers to Yes/No questions in Vietnamese do not always contain the same words for "yes" or "no" as in English, but rather depend on the structure or content of the question. In general, **có** $[kah^2]$ can be used as a "yes" for the above-mentioned question, in which it is about an action expressed by the verb **mang** $[mang^1]$ ("to bring"): **Da, có** $[ya^6]$ kah^2] "Yes, we did."

While **có** means "yes," it can also mean "to have" as a verb. In a Yes/No question containing $\mathbf{c}\acute{\mathbf{o}}$ as a verb (where $\mathbf{c}\acute{\mathbf{o}}$ should technically appear twice), this word is used only once to avoid repetition: **Cô có nhiều hành lý không?** [koh¹ kah² nhyehw⁵ hănh⁵ lee² *khohngm*¹] "Do you have a lot of luggage?"

In a Yes/No question containing the verb $\mathbf{la} [la^5]$ ("to be"), followed by a noun complement, the adjective **phải** [fie^4] ("right, correct") is also used between **có** and **là**: **Ông có phải là Việt kiều không?** [ohngm¹ kah² fie⁴ la⁵ vyeht⁶ kyehw⁵ khohngm¹] "Are you a Vietnamese expatriate?" To this question construction, **phái** is used as a "yes," and **không phải** [khohngm¹ fie⁴] as a "no."

c. Choice questions: In this type of question, the conjunction hay $\lceil h \breve{a} y^1 \rceil$ ("or") is used between the two choices: **Sáng nay chúng ta đi biển hay ở nhà?** [shang² năy¹ choongm² $ta^1 dee^1 byehn^4 hau uh^4 nha^5$ "Are we going to the beach or staying home today?"

A possible answer to this type of question, obviously, does not include $\mathbf{co} [kah^2]$ or **không** [khohngm¹], but rather one of the two choices mentioned in the question: **Chúng** ta sẽ đi biển [choongm² ta¹ she⁴ dee¹ byehn⁴] "We'll go to the beach."

d. Tag questions: These questions are actually statements followed by a "tag," which is a word or phrase that turns it them into questions that ask for confirmation.

Chuyến bay từ Hà Nội sẽ đến trễ, **phải không?** chwyehn² băy¹ tŭ⁵ ha⁵ nohy⁶ she³ dehn² treh⁴ fie⁴ khohngm¹ "The flight from Hanoi will arrive late, will it not?" Cô không thích siêu thị này à? koh^1 $khohngm^1$ $theech^2$ $shyehw^1$ $thee^6$ nay^5 a^5 "You don't like this supermarket, do you?" Hôm nay anh không đi chơi đâu sao? hohm¹ năy¹ ănh¹ khohngm¹ dee¹ chuhy¹ dohw¹ shaw¹ "You're not going out today, are you?"

B. Imperative sentences

Imperative sentences in Vietnamese can contain the bare form of the relevant verb or also include particles for various nuances.

a. When a command comes with just the bare form of the verb, it usually expresses a familiar tone, including a lack of politeness or respect: **Lái nhanh lên!** [*lie*² *nhănh*¹ *lehn*¹] "Drive faster." A subject pronoun can be used before the verb, **Anh lái nhanh lên!** $[\check{a}nh^1 lie^2]$ $nhănh^1$ $lehn^1$].

The bare form of the verb is also used in other contexts such as (i) instructions, **Uống một ngày hai viên** [wohng² moht6 ngặy5 hie1 vyehn1] "Take two pills a day"; (ii) cooking recipes, **Cho đường vào nước rồi quậy đều** [chah¹ dǔuhng⁵ vaw⁵ nǔuhk² rohy⁵ kway⁶ dehw⁵] "Add sugar to the water and stir well"; (iii) signs, **Chay châm lai** [chăy⁶ *chum*⁶ *lie*⁶] "Slow down," etc.

- b. The particle $\mathbf{PI} [dee^{i}]$, used after the verb (and its object, if any), expresses a mild urge, \mathbf{Ra} **lấy hành lý đi, con!** $[ra^1 lay^2 h \check{a}nh^5 lee^2 dee^1 kahn^1]$ "Go pick up our luggage, son!"
- c. The particle **NHÉ** $[nhe^2]$, used at the end of a command (but can be followed by a term of address), expresses a friendly urge, **Don phòng cho chúng tôi nhé!** [yahn⁶ fahngm⁵ chah¹ choongm² tohy¹ nhe²] "Clean up our room, OK?"
- d. The particle $\mathbf{C}\hat{\mathbf{U}}'[k\check{\mathbf{u}}^2]$, used before the verb, expresses an encouragement, $\mathbf{C}\hat{\mathbf{a}}\mathbf{c}$ and \mathbf{chi} $\mathbf{c}\hat{\mathbf{w}}$ thŭuhng¹ sa² năy⁵] "Just shop at this mall as you please."
- The particle **HÃY** $[h\check{a}y^3]$, used before the verb, is usually used in formal commands, **HÃY** tôn trong luật đi đường [hãy³ tohn¹ trahngm6 lwut6 dee¹ dǔuhng⁵] "Obey traffic laws."
- f. The particle **XIN** [seen¹], used before the verb (and can be followed by a personal pronoun or term of address), expresses politeness, **Xin xếp hàng tai đây** [seen¹ sehp² hang⁵ $tie^6 day^1$] "Please get in line here."
- The particle **GIÙM** [$yoom^5$], used after the verb (and optionally before an indirect object, i.e. the person(s) for whom a favor is asked) expresses the speaker's asking for help, Cô mua giùm tôi hai vé xe lửa [koh¹ moouh¹ yoom⁵ tohy¹ hie¹ ve² se¹ lŭuh⁴] "Help me purchase two train tickets."
- h. The particle $\mathbf{MOT}[muhy^5]$, usually followed by a personal pronoun or a term of address, is used before the verb to express an invitation, Mòi quý vị thưởng thức chương trình văn nghệ truyền thống của chúng tôi [muhy⁵ kwee² vee⁶ thữuhng⁴ thữk² chữuhng¹ treenh⁵ văn¹ ngeh⁶ trwyehn⁵ thohngm² koouh⁴ choongm² tohy¹] "Please enjoy our traditional entertainment program."

The particle $\mathbf{D}\dot{\mathbf{V}}\mathbf{N}\mathbf{G} \left[d\check{u}ng^{5}\right]$ is used before the verb in negative commands, $\mathbf{D}\dot{\mathbf{w}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{g}$ hút thuốc trong pham vi 10 mét [dŭng⁵ hoot² thwohk² trahngm¹ fam⁶ vee¹ mŭuhy⁵ met²] "Do not smoke within 10 meters."

A command can include more than one particle for more effect, **Xin cô đợi tôi một chút nhé** [seen¹ koh¹ duhy⁵ tohy¹ moht⁶ choot² nhe²] "Please wait for me a little, OK?" (Politeness + Friendly urge); **Mòi moi người bắt đầu ăn đi!** [muhy⁵ moy⁶ ngữuhy⁵ $b\check{a}t^2$ dohw⁵ $\check{a}n^1$ dee¹] "Please go ahead and start eating" (Invitation + Mild urge).

IV. PROVERB

AUDIO 4

ĐI MÔT NGÀY ĐÀNG, HOC MÔT SÀNG KHÔN.

dee¹ moht⁶ ngăy⁵ dang⁵ hahkp⁶ moht⁶ shang⁵ khohn¹

- **Literal meaning:** After a day's travel, one has learned a sieve of smarts.
- **Figurative meaning:** Traveling is the best form of education.
- **Cultural implication:** This proverb uses the metaphor of a sieve, a familiar, large utensil made of bamboo, used by farmers to separate rice grains according to their sizes.



V. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TÙ' - NOUNS **biển** [bvehn⁴] sea, beach **bru điện** $[b\breve{u}w^1 dyehn^6]$ post office **cảnh sát** $\lceil k \ddot{a} n h^4 s h a t^2 \rceil$ police officer **chuyến bay** [chwyehn² băy¹] flight **chuyến du lich** [chwyehn² yoo¹ leech6] trip **công viên** [kohngm¹ vyehn¹] park **đèn giao thông** [den⁵ yaw¹ thohngm¹] traffic lights **điện thoại cầm tay** [dyehn⁶ thwie⁶ kum⁵ $t \breve{a} v^1$ cell phone **đường** $[d\check{u}uhng^5]$ street giấy nhập cảnh [vav² nhup⁶ kặnh⁴] visa **hãng hàng không** [hang³ hang⁵ khohngm¹] airline **hành lý** [*hănh*⁵ *lee*²] luggage **khách sạn** [khặch² shan⁶] hotel **máy bay** $[m \ddot{a} y^2 b \ddot{a} y^1]$ airplane **máy rút tiền** $[m \ddot{a} y^2 root^2 tyehn^5]$ ATM **ngã tu** $\lceil nga^3 t \breve{u}^1 \rceil$ intersection **ngân hàng** [ngun¹ hang⁵] bank **ngoại tệ** [*ngwie*⁶ *teh*⁶] foreign currency **nhà hàng** $[nha^5 hang^5]$ restaurant $\mathbf{n}\mathbf{\check{a}m}$ [$n\breve{a}m^5$] to lie; to be located **ngoạn cảnh** [ngwan⁶ kănh⁴] to sightsee **phi trường** [fee¹ trữuhng⁵] airport **queo** [kwew⁶] to make a turn **siêu thị** [shyehw¹ thee⁶] supermarket **thăm** [thăm¹] to visit **thành phố** [thnh⁵ foh²] city **thông hành** [thohngm¹ hănh⁵] passport thư viện [thử¹ vyehn⁶] library **thương xá** [thữuhng¹ sa²] shopping mall **tiệm ăn** [tyehm⁶ ăn¹] eatery, diner **trả phòng** [tra⁴ fahngm⁵] to check out $\mathbf{v\acute{e}} [ve^2]$ ticket

viện bảo tàng [vyehn⁶ baw⁴ tang⁵] museum

xe buýt $[se^1 bweet^2]$ bus **xe** $\mathbf{d\hat{o}} [se^1 dah^5]$ charter bus **xe lửa** [se¹ lŭuh⁴] train **xếp hàng** $[sehp^2 hang^5]$ to stand in line

ĐÔNG TỪ - VERBS

băng qua đường [*băng*¹ *kwa*¹ *dŭuhng*⁵] to cross the street **chỉ đường** [*chee*⁴ duhng⁵] to show the way **đến** $\lceil dehn^2 \rceil$ to come; to arrive $\mathbf{di} [dee^1]$ to go; to leave; to depart **đi bộ** $\lceil dee^1 boh^6 \rceil$ to walk **ghi tên** [gee^1 $tehn^1$] to check in; to register **giúp** [yoop²] to help **hút thuốc** $[hoot^2 thwohk^2]$ to smoke **lái xe** [$lie^2 se^1$] to drive

GIỚI TỪ - PREPOSITIONS

bên phải của [behn¹ fie⁴ koouh⁴] on the right of **bên trái của** [behn¹ trie² koouh⁴] on the left of **canh** $\lceil k \breve{a} n h^6 \rceil$ next to **chung quanh** [choongm¹ kwănh¹] around **đối diện** [dohy² yehn⁶] opposite, facing **dưới** [yŭuhy²] below; under **gần** $[gun^5]$ near **giữa** $[y \ddot{u} u h^3]$ between; in the middle of **ngoài** [ngwie⁵] outside **sau** [shăw¹] behind; after **trên** [trehn¹] above; over **trong** [*trahngm*¹] in, inside **trước** [tr $\check{u}uhk^2$] in front of; before **xa** $\lceil sa^1 \rceil$ far from

CHAPTER 8

Terms of Address: A Cultural Aspect

Family Relationships



I. TERMS OF ADDRESS

A. Kinship terms

When speaking to other people, Vietnamese speakers use one of the two sets of nouns to address the interlocutors and to address themselves. The first set includes the kinship terms such as **ba** $[ba^1]$ ("dad"), **me** $[me^6]$ ("mom"), **con** $[kahn^1]$ ("child"), **anh** $[\check{a}nh^1]$ ("older brother"), **chi** $[chee^6]$ ("older sister"), **em** $[em^1]$ ("younger brother/sister"), etc. Except for **ba** and **me**, which are used only for one's own parents, the other kinship terms can be used with people outside the family. All these terms can be used as a singular, second person pronoun, or "you": **Me ăn com chua?** $[me^6\check{a}n^1kuhm^1ch\check{u}uh^1]$ ("Mom, have you eaten yet?"); **Mấy giờ anh về nhà?** $[may^2yuh^5\check{a}nh^1veh^5nha^5]$ ("What time are you coming home?"). Note that the latter example can be used toward one's own older brother or any unrelated man around the age of the speaker's older brother.

On the other hand, all of those terms can also be used as the singular, first person pronoun, or "I," for the speaker to address him-/herself when speaking to their respective family member. For example, a young woman can tell her mom, **Tối nay con sẽ gọi điện thoại cho mẹ** $[tohy^1 \ n u³y^1 \ kahn^1 \ she^3 \ goy^6 \ dyehn^6 \ thwie^6 \ chah^1 \ me^6]$ ("I will call you tonight, Mom"); or a father tells his son, **Ba đang đợi con về ăn com** $[ba^1 \ dang^1 \ duhy^6 \ kahn^1 \ veh^5 \ an^1 \ kuhm^1]$ ("I'm waiting for you to come home for dinner"). Again, except for **ba** and **mẹ**, the other terms can be used between unrelated people. If a little boy is speaking to a young man, he can tell the young man something like **Anh ơi, em bị lạc đường** $[anh^1 \ uhy^1 \ em^1 \ bee^6 \ lak^6 \ duuhng^5]$ ("Hey big brother, I'm lost"); or a young woman can ask a little girl, **Chị nhờ em làm cái này nhé!** $[chee^6 \ nhuh^5 \ em^1 \ lam^5 \ kie^2 \ n u³y^5 \ nhe^2]$ ("I'm asking you to help me with something, OK?).

B. Professional titles

The second set of terms of address is derived from a pool of professions or professional titles such as **bác sĩ** [bak² shee³] ("doctor"), **giáo sư** [yaw² shŭ¹] ("professor"), **luật sư** [lwut⁶ shŭ¹] ("law-yer"), **tiến sĩ** [tyehn² shee³] ("doctorate holder"). These terms can be used only to mean "you," not "I' or "me": **Giáo sư có cần gì không ạ?** [yaw² shŭ¹ kah² kun⁵ yee⁵ khohngm¹ a⁶] ("Did you need anything, Professor?); **Mời luật sư ngồi** [muhy⁵ lwut⁶ shŭ¹ ngohy⁵] ("Please sit down").

Choosing the proper term to address oneself as "I" when talking to someone is not an easy task. In general, \hat{toi} [$tohy^1$] can be used professionally with co-workers, colleagues or people the same age as the speaker. It should not be used, however, when talking to people older than the speaker, especially to parents, grandparents, uncles, aunts, etc. In addition to age, social status is of great importance for the speaker in his or her choice of terms. For example, if a person is talking to someone his or her older sibling's age, he or she can use em ("younger sibling") for "I/me" and call that person $ext{anh}$ ("older brother") or $ext{chi}$ ("older sister").

II. PRACTICE

AUDIO 1

A. The Vietnamese family

Listen to the following reading. Afterwards, read it on your own.



Một đại gia đình Việt Nam bao gồm bên nội và bên ngoại. Bên nội có ông nội, bà nội, bác (anh của bố), chú (em trai của bố) và cô (chị hay em gái của bố). Bên ngoại có ông ngoại, bà ngoại, cậu (anh hay em trai của mẹ) và dì (chị hay em gái của mẹ). Như ở nhiều nước Á châu khác, cặp vợ chồng nào cũng muốn có con trai lẫn con gái, nhất là con trai để nối dõi tông đường.

Cách gọi những người có liên hệ qua hôn nhân khá phức tạp. Về bên nội, vợ của bác gọi là bác gái, vợ của chú gọi là thím, còn chồng của cô gọi là dượng. Về bên ngoại, vợ của cậu gọi là mợ và chồng của dì cũng gọi là dượng như bên nội.

moht⁶ die⁶ ya² deenh⁵ vyeht⁶ nam¹ baw¹ gohm⁵ behn¹ nohy⁶ va⁵ behn¹ ngwie⁶ // behn¹ nohy⁵ kah^2 ohngm¹ nohy⁶ ba^5 nohy⁶ bak^2 ($\check{a}nh^1$ koouh⁴ boh^2) $choo^2$ (em^1 trie¹ koouh⁴ boh^2) va^5 koh^1 $(chee^6 h \ddot{a} y^1 em^1 gie^2 koouh^4 boh^2) // behn^1 ngwie^6 kah^2 ohngm^1 ngwie^6 ba^5 ngwie^6 kohw^6 (ănh^1)$ $h \ddot{a} y^1 e m^1 trie^1 koouh^4 me^6$) $v a^5 y e e^5$ (chee⁶ $h \ddot{a} y^1 e m^1 g i e^2 koouh^4 me^6$) // $n h \ddot{u}^1 u h^4 n h y e h w^5$ nŭuhk² a² chohw¹ khak² kặp6 vuh6 chohngm5 naw5 koongm3 mwohn² kah² kahn¹ trie¹ lun³ kahn¹ gie² nhut² la⁵ kahn¹ trie¹ deh⁴ nohy² yoy³ tohngm¹ dŭuhng⁵ //

kăch² goy6 nhŭng³ ngŭuhy5 kah² lyehn¹ heh6 kwa¹ hohn¹ nhun¹ kha² fŭk² tap6 // veh5 behn¹ nohy⁶ vuh⁶ koouh⁴ bak¹ goy⁶ la⁵ bak² gie² vuh⁶ koouh⁴ choo² goy⁶ la⁵ theem² kahn⁵ chohngm⁵ koouh⁴ koh¹ goy⁶ la⁵ yŭuhng⁶ // veh⁵ behn¹ ngwie⁶ vuh⁶ koouh⁴ kohw⁶ goy⁶ la⁵ muh⁶ va⁵ chohngm⁵ koouh⁴ yee⁵ koongm³ goy⁶ la⁵ yŭuhng⁶ nhŭ¹ behn¹ nohy⁶ //

"A Vietnamese extended family consists of the paternal side and the maternal side. On the paternal side are the paternal grandfather, the paternal grandmother, the father's older brother, his younger brother and his older or younger sister. On the maternal side are the maternal grandfather, the maternal grandmother, the mother's older or younger brother and her older or younger sister. Like in many other Asian countries, most couples like to have both sons and daughters, especially a son to carry on the family name.

The ways to call the in-laws are rather complicated. On the dad's side, the wife of one's uncle (father's older brother) is called "**bác gái**," the wife of one's uncle (father's younger brother) is called "thím," and the husband of one's paternal aunt is called "dwong." On the mom's side, the wife of one's maternal uncle is called "mo" and the husband of one's maternal aunt is called "dwong," just like on the dad's side."

B. Aspect markers

Refer to the Notes on Grammar section below to fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the correct aspect markers ($\mathbf{d\tilde{a}} [da^3]$, $\mathbf{v\tilde{u}u}h^5$), $\mathbf{dang} [dang^1]$, $\mathbf{s\tilde{a}p} [sh\tilde{a}p^2]$, $\mathbf{s\tilde{e}}$ $\lceil she^3 \rceil$).



AUDIO 2

Listen to the following sentences before the addition of aspect markers.

1.	Dì dượng của tôi lấy nhau được ba năm nay.
	yee^5 dŭuĥng 6 koouh 4 tohy 1 lay 2 nhă w^1 dŭuĥ k^5 ba 1 nă m^1 năy 1
	My aunt and her husband have been married for three years.
2.	Chị tôi sinh con đầu lòng vào cuối năm.
	$chee^6 tohy^1$ $sheenh^1 kahn^1 dohw^5 lahngm^5 vaw^5 kwohy^2 năm^1$.
	My older sister will have her first child toward the end of the year.
3.	Ông ngoại của anh ấy mất ở Sài Gòn.
	ohngm¹ ngwie ⁶ koouh⁴ ănh¹ ay² mut² uh⁴ shie ⁵ gahn⁵
	His maternal grandfather has just passed away in Saigon.
4.	Bố mẹ của cô sống ở thành phố nào?
	boh² me⁵ koouh⁴ koh¹ shohngm² uh⁴ thănh⁵ foh² naw⁵
	Which city are your parents living in?
5.	Anh chị làm đám cưới với nhau, phải không?
	ănh 1 chee 6 lam 5 dam 2 kŭuhy 2 vuhy 2 nhăw 1 fie 4 khohngm 1
	You guys are going to have a wedding, aren't you?
6.	Anh Dũng cầu hôn với chị Loan cách đây hai tuần.
	ănh¹ yoohngm³kohw⁵ hohn¹ vuhy² chee⁶ lwan¹ kăch² day¹ hie¹ twun⁵
	Dũng just proposed to Loan two weeks ago.
7.	Mẹ và các dì nấu nướng để chuẩn bị làm đám giỗ ông ngoại.
	me ⁶ va ⁵ kak ² yee ⁵ nohw ² nŭuhng ² deh ⁴ chwun ⁴ bee ⁶ lam ⁵ dam ² yoh ³ ohngm ¹
	$ngwie^6$
	My mom and aunts are cooking in preparation for our grandfather's death anniversary.

III. NOTES OF GRAMMAR

Aspect markers

It might have been noticed that Vietnamese verbs do not have morphological markers for tense. The tense notion of an action can be deduced from the temporal or logical context in which it is carried out: **Bố mẹ tôi quen nhau trong một buổi tiệc sinh nhật.** [boh² me⁶ tohy¹ kwen¹ nhăw¹ trahngm¹ moht⁶ bwohy⁴ tyehk⁶ sheenh¹ nhut⁶] ("My parents met at a birthday party"). On the other hand, verbs can be accompanied by a class of particles called aspect markers. With these markers, an action can be expressed as completed, in progress or projected. Aspect markers, however, are not obligatorily used with verbs if the context is sufficiently clear.

Completed	Just completed	In progress	Projected (soon)	Projected (later)
ĐÃ	VÙA	ĐANG	SĂP	SĒ
da ³	vŭuh⁵	$dang^1$	shăp²	she ³

AUDIO 3

Listen to the following sentences and repeat after the speaker.

Chú của Lan đã có vơ chưa? choo² koouh⁴ lan¹ da³ kah² vuh⁶ chŭuh "Is Lan's uncle married?"

Cô Mai **vừa** lấy chồng năm ngoái. koh¹ mie¹ vŭuh⁵ lay² chohngm⁵ năm¹ ngwie² "Miss Mai just got married last year."

Chị Thuý đang mang thai đứa con thứ hai. chee⁶ thwee² dang¹ mang¹ thie¹ dŭuh² kahn¹ thŭ² hie¹ "Thuy is expecting her second child."

Anh tôi **sắp** lấy vợ trong năm nay. ănh tohy¹ shăp² lay² vuh⁵ trahngm¹ năm¹ năy¹ "My older brother is going to get married this year."

Cháu bé của anh chị **sẽ** sinh vào tháng mấy? chăw² be² koouh⁴ ănh¹ chee6 she³ seenh¹ vaw⁵ thang² may² "What month will your baby be born in?"

IV. PROVERB

AUDIO 4

MÔT GIOT MÁU ĐÀO HƠN AO NƯỚC LÃ.

moht⁶ yaht⁶ măw² daw⁵ huhn¹ aw¹ nŭuhk² la³

- **Literal meaning:** A drop of red blood is worth more than a pond of water.
- **Figurative meaning:** Blood relations are the most important relations in life.
- **Cultural implication:** Family plays an important role in Vietnamese society. It is common that most families consist of three generations living under the same roof: the grandparents, the parents and their children.



V. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TÙ' - NOUNS

anh [*ănh*¹] brother **anh/chị/em họ** [*ănh/chee*⁶/*em*¹ *hah*⁶] cousin

bà ngoại [$ba^5 ngwie^6$] maternal grandmother

bà nội $[ba^5 nohy^6]$ paternal grandmother **bác (gái)** $[bak^2 gie^2]$ wife of "**bác trai**"

bác (trai) [bak² trie¹] paternal uncle (older than father)

bő/ba/cha [$boh^2/ba^1/cha^1$] father

bố/mẹ chồng [boh² me⁶ chohngm⁵]

father/mother-in-law (of the woman)

bố/mẹ vợ [$boh^2 me^6 vuh^6$]

father/mother-in-law (of the man)

 $\mathbf{c\hat{a}u}$ [$kohw^6$] maternal uncle

cháu (trai/gái) [chăw² trie¹/gie²]

nephew/niece

chi [$chee^6$] older sister

chồng [chohngm⁵] husband

chú [choo²] paternal uncle (younger than father)

cô [koh¹] paternal aunt

con (trai/gái) [kahn¹ trie¹/gie²] boy;

son/girl; daughter

con dâu [kahn¹ yohw¹] daughter-in-law

con rể [kahn¹ reh⁴] son-in-law

dì [yee⁵] maternal aunt

dượng [yữuhng⁶] husband of "**cô**" or "**dì**"

đám cưới $[dam^2 k \ddot{u}uhy^2]$ wedding

đám giỗ $[dam^2 yoh^3]$ death anniversary

đàn ông [dan⁵ ohngm¹] man

đàn bà [dan⁵ ba⁵] woman

em (trai/gái) $[em^1 trie^1/gie^2]$ younger

brother/sister

gia đình [ya¹ deenh⁵] family

me/má $[me^6/ma^2]$ mother

 \mathbf{mo} [muh^6] wife of " \mathbf{cau} "

ông ngoại [*ohngm*¹ *ngwie*⁶] maternal grandfather

ông nội $[ohngm^1 nohy^6]$ paternal grandfather

thím [theem²] wife of "chú"

 $\mathbf{vo} [vuh^6]$ wife

ĐỘNG TỪ – VERBS

cầu hôn [kohw⁵ hohn¹] to propose

(marriage) **hőt** [choht²] to di

chết [*cheht*²] to die

có chồng [*kah*² *chohngm*⁵] to be married

có vợ $[kah^2 vuh^6]$ to be married (for a man) **làm đám cưới** [lam⁵ dam² kŭuhy²] to have a wedding

lấy chồng [lay² chohngm⁵] to get married (for a woman)

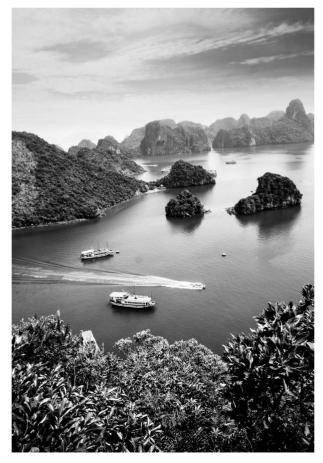
lấy vợ $[lay^2 vuh^6]$ to get married (for a man) mang thai [mang¹ thie¹] to be pregnant **mất** $[mut^2]$ to lose; to pass away **sinh** [*sheenh*¹] to give birth; to be born **sống** $\lceil shohngm^2 \rceil$ to live **yêu** [yehw¹] to love

TIỂU TỪ - PARTICLES

 $\mathbf{d\tilde{a}} [da^3]$ indicates a completed action **đang** [dang¹] indicates an on-going action sắp [shăp²] indicates a planned action (soon) $\mathbf{s\tilde{e}}$ [she³] indicates a planned action (later) **vùa** [vŭuh⁵] indicates a recently completed action







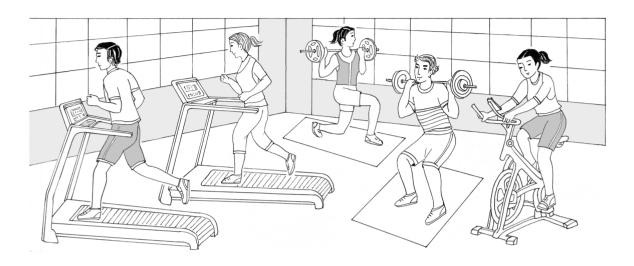




CHAPTER 9

Particles: "Flavors" of the Sentences

Health and Medical Care



I. PARTICLES

In Vietnamese, several particles are used in different types of sentences to express an array of attitudes, intentions or emotions on the speaker's part. These particles add "flavors" to sentences that would otherwise sound rather bland in discourse. Particles can have different positions in a sentence.

- a. Initial particles: These particles were introduced in Chapter 7, repeated here for review: (i) Thura [thuuh¹]—followed by a term of address—expresses the speaker's respect toward the interlocutor: Thura bác, hôm nay bác thấy đỡ chura? [thuuh¹ bak² hohm¹ nāy¹ bak² thay² duh⁴ chuuh¹] ("Sir, are you feeling better today?"); (ii) hãy [hāy³]—followed by a verb and possibly preceded by a personal pronoun or term of address—is used in a formal sounding command: Các em hãy giữ gìn sức khoẻ [kak² em¹ hāy³ yu³ yeen⁵ shuk² khwe⁴] ("You guys, stay healthy!"); (iii) xin [seen¹]—followed by a personal pronoun or a term of address and a verb—is used in a polite command: Xin điền vào mẫu khai tình trạng sức khoẻ này [seen¹ dyehn⁵ vaw⁵ mohw³ khie¹ teenh⁵ trang⁵ shuk² khwe⁴ nāy⁵] ("Please fill out this health history form"). The most common initial particle, however, is (iv) da [ya⁶], which expresses respect and appears before any other type of words in a sentence: Da phải, cháu thấy đau ở ngực và bụng [ya⁶ fie⁴ chăw² thay² dăw¹ uh⁴ nguk⁶ va⁵ boongm⁶] ("That's right, I feel pain in my chest and abdomen").
- **b. Middle particles:** (i) **Mà** $[ma^5]$ —appearing after the subject of a sentence—is used to express an emphatic conditional situation: **Tôi mà biết món ăn này dễ gây ngộ độc thì chắc**

tôi đã không dám ăn [tohy¹ ma⁵ byeht² mahn² ăn¹ năy⁵ yeh³ gay¹ ngoh⁶ dohkp⁶ thee⁵ chăk² tohy¹ da³ khohngm¹ yam² ăn¹] ("Had I known that this dish was likely to cause poisoning, I would not have dared eat it"); (ii) thì [thee⁵]—appearing after a topicalized element: Căn bệnh này thì các bác sĩ có thể chữa được [kăn¹ behnh⁶ năy⁵ thee⁵ kak² bak² shee³ kah² theh⁴ chữuh³ dữuhk⁶] ("This illness, the doctors are able to treat"); (iii) lại [lie⁶]—used after a subject—indicates a contradiction: Lan đang bị cảm mà lại phải làm quá nhiều việc [lan¹ dang¹ bee⁶ kam⁴ ma⁵ lie⁶ fie⁴ lam⁵ kwa² nhyehw⁵ vyehk⁶] ("Lan is having a cold, yet she has to do so much work"); (iv) là [la⁵]—used between an adverb of degree (rất [rut²] "very," thật [thut⁶] "really") and an adjective or an adverb of manner—intensifies an idea that is already emphasized: Loại thuốc bổ này thật là công hiệu! [lwie⁶ thwohk² boh⁴ năy⁵ thut⁶ la⁵ kohngm¹ hyehw⁶] ("This supplement is really effective!").

c. Final particles: (i) a [a⁶] is used at the end of a question or a statement to show respect toward the interlocutor: Thura bác sĩ, tôi uống thuốc này một ngày mấy viên a? [thữuh¹ bak² shee³ tohy¹ wohng² thwohk² năy⁵ moht⁶ ngãy⁵ may² vyehn¹ a⁶] ("Doctor, how many of these pills do I take every day?"). In addition, an adult can use this particle following a term of address in a statement with a younger person in an endearing way: Bác hơi bị nhức đầu, cháu a [bak² huhy¹ bee⁶ nhữk¹ dohw⁵ chãw² a⁶] ("I have a mild headache, my dear"); (ii) vậy [vay⁶] is used at the end of a question (and can be followed by a term of address) to express interest or concern: Tại sao tay của con bị sưng vậy? [tie⁶ shaw¹ tăy¹ koouh⁴ kahn¹ bee⁶ shǔng¹ vay⁶] ("Why are you having a stomachache, kid?"); (iii) hở [huh⁴]—appearing at the end of a question, but can be followed by a personal pronoun or term of address—is used to make the question sound friendly or "tone down" its inquisitiveness: Em bị chóng mặt hở? [em¹ bee⁶ chahngm² mặt⁶ huh⁴] ("Are you feeling dizzy?"). Several other final particles are used in imperative sentences and can be reviewed in Chapter 7.

II. PRACTICE

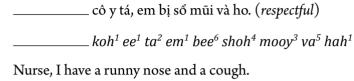
AUDIO 1

A. Particles

Listen to the following sentences, then add a particle to the blank provided according to the suggestions in parentheses.



1.	Hôm nay bà cảm thấy thế nào? (respectful)
	$hohm^1 n \ddot{a} y^1 b a^5 k a m^4 t h a y^2 t h e h^2 n a w^5$
	How are you feeling today, ma'am?
2.	cô y tá, em bị sổ mũi và ho. (respectful)



- Em trai tôi bị sốt cao, còn em gái tôi _______ bị cúm. (contrastive) 3. em¹ trie¹ tohy¹ bee⁶ shoht² kaw¹ kahn⁵ em¹ gie² tohy¹ ______ bee⁶ koom² My little brother has a high fever, whereas my little sister is having the flu.
- 4. Bác sĩ ______ biết chị không ăn kiêng, ông ấy sẽ không hài lòng đâu. (conditional) $bak^2 shee^3$ _____byeht² $chee^6 khohngm^1 \check{a}n^1 kyehng^1 ohngm^1 ay^2 she^3 khohngm^1$ hie⁵ lahngm⁵ dohw¹ If your doctor knows that you do not stick to a diet, he will not be happy.
- Một tuần anh tập thể dục mấy lần ______? (concerned) 5. moht⁶ twun⁵ ănh¹ tup⁶ theh⁴ yookp⁶ may² lun⁵ _____ How many times do you exercise a week?

AUDIO 2

B. Adverbs of degree

Listen to the following sentences, then put the adverb of degree in parentheses in the correct position in each sentence. Refer to the Notes on Grammar section for explanations.



- Ba tôi đi ngủ đúng giờ. // (lắm [lăm²])
 ba tohy¹ dee¹ ngoo⁴ doongm² yuh⁵
 My dad goes to bed (very) punctually.
- Thưa bác sĩ, lưng tôi đau. // (quá [kwa²]) thữuh¹ bak² shee³ lững¹ tohy¹ dăw¹
 Doctor, my back hurts (so badly).
- Me uống thuốc bổ đếu đặn. // (thật [thut⁶])
 me⁶ tohy¹ wohng² thwok² boh⁴ dehw⁵ dăn⁶
 Mom takes her supplements (quite) regularly.
- 4. Chị tôi sợ đi nha sĩ. // (rất [rut²])
 chee⁶ tohy¹ shuh⁶ dee¹ nha¹ shee³
 My older sister dreads going to the dentist (very much).
- Anh ấy cảm thấy mệt. // (hơi [huhy¹])
 ănh¹ ay² kam⁴ thay² meht⁶
 He is feeling (kind of) tired.
- 6. Tôi thấy việc ăn uống bổ dưỡng là gay go. // (khá) tohy¹ thay² vyehk⁶ ăn¹ wohng² boh⁴ yữuhng³ la² găy¹ gah¹ I think eating healthy is (pretty) challenging.

III. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

Adverbs of degree: These adverbs intensify an adjective, a verb or an adverb of manner.

- **rất** [rut²] ("very") is used both in speaking and writing. It precedes an adjective (**rất ốm yếu** [rut² ohm² yehw²] "very sickly"), an adverb of manner (**rất chậm chạp** [rut² chum⁶ chap⁶] "very slowly") and a number of verbs of perception or emotion (**rất thích** [rut² theech²] "to like very much," **rất nhớ** [rut² nhuh²] "to miss a lot").
- lắm [lăm²] ("very") is used only in speaking. It follows the modified word or phrase (đau lắm [dăw¹ lăm²] "very painful," sợ đi bác sĩ lắm [shuh⁴ dee¹ bak² shee³ lăm²] "to be very scared of going to the doctor").
- quá [kwa²] ("so, too") is used only in speaking. It usually follows the modified word or phrase (nhức quá [nhŭk² kwa²] "to hurt so much," khó chịu quá [khah² cheew6 kwa²] "so uncomfortable"). When quá precedes another word, it indicates a high level of intensity (quá nặng [kwa² năng6] "extremely grave," quá nhanh [kwa² nhănh¹] "extremely fast," quá tin [kwa² teen¹] "to believe too much").
- **hoi** [huhy¹] ("kind of") is used only in speaking. It comes before an adjective (**hoi surng** [huhy¹ shŭng¹] "kind of swollen"), and adverb (**hoi bất ngờ** [huhy¹ but² nguh⁵] "kind of unexpectedly") or a verb of perception or emotion (**hoi ngán** [huhy¹ ngan²] "kind of dread,"

- **hơi hiểu** [*huhy*¹ *hyehw*⁴] "kind of understand").
- **thật** $[thut^6]$ ("really, quite") is used both in speaking and writing when it precedes the modified word or phrase (that hieu nghiem [thut6 hyehw6 ngyehm6] "very efficacious," that $\mathbf{d\check{a}ng} [thut^6 d\check{a}ng^2]$ "very bitter"). **Thât** can follow another word, but only in spoken language ($\mathbf{d\tilde{e}}$ chiu thât [yeh^4 cheew⁶ thut⁵] "quite comfortable").
- **khá** $\lceil kha^2 \rceil$ ("fairly, moderately") is used both in speaking and writing. It precedes the word or phrase that it modifies (**khá khoẻ khoắn** [*kha² khwe⁴ khwăn²*] "fairly well," **khá trầm trong** [kha² trum⁵ trahngm⁶] "fairly serious").

IV. PROVERB



ĐAU TIẾC THÂN. LÀNH TIẾC CỦA.

dăw¹ tyehk² thun¹ lănh⁵ tyehk² koouh⁴

- **Literal meaning:** In sickness, people feel sorry for their body. In good health, they care more about their material possessions.
- **Figurative meaning:** Most people do not care for their well-being until they get sick.
- **Cultural implication:** In a third world country, people tend to focus more on making a living than on caring for their health.



V. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TỪ - NOUNS **bàn tav** [ban⁵ tăv¹] hand **bênh** [behnh⁶] disease, sickness **bênh nhân** [behnh⁶ nhun¹] patient **bênh viên** [behnh⁶ vyehn⁶] hospital **bênh xá** [behnh⁶ sa²] clinic **bung** [boongm⁶] abdomen, belly cảm [kam⁴] cold **cánh tav** [*kănh*² *tăv*¹] arm **chân** [chun¹] foot **cổ** [koh⁴] neck **cúm** [koom²] flu **da dàv** $[va^6 v \breve{a} v^5]$ stomach **đầu** [dohw⁵] head **hong** [hahngm⁶] throat **lung** [lŭng¹] back **luõi** [*lŭuhy*³] tongue $\mathbf{m}\mathbf{\acute{a}t} [m\mathbf{\breve{a}}t^2]$ eye **miệng** [*myehng*⁶] mouth $\mathbf{m\tilde{u}i} [mooy^3]$ nose **ngón tay** [ngahn² tăy¹] finger **ngực** $[ng \check{u} k^6]$ chest **phổi** [fohy⁴] lung phòng cấp cứu [fahngm⁵ kup² kŭw²]

TÍNH TỪ - ADIECTIVES **bênh** [behnh⁶] sick **buồn ngủ** [bwohn⁵ ngoo⁴] sleepy **buồn nôn** [bwohn⁵ nohn¹] nauseated **chóng mặt** [*chahngm*² *mặt*⁶] dizzy **khoė** [*khwe*⁴] well, healthy **mêt** [meht⁶] tired **năng** $[n\breve{a}ng^6]$ heavy; grave, serious **sung** [*shŭng*¹] swollen ĐÔNG TỪ - VERBS **bi** [bee^6] to be (in an unfavorable situation) **cảm thấy** [kam⁴ thay²] to feel **đau** $\lceil d\breve{a}w^1 \rceil$ to hurt **đau bung** $[d\breve{a}w^1 boongm^6]$ to have a stomachache **đau cổ hong** $[d\breve{a}w^1 koh^4 hahngm^6]$ to have a sore throat **đau lưng** $[d\check{a}w^1 l\check{u}ng^1]$ to have a backache **đi bác sĩ** $[dee^1 bak^2 shee^3]$ to go to the doctor **hắt hơi** [*hặt*² *huhy*¹] to sneeze **ho** $\lceil hah^1 \rceil$ to cough **khám** [kham²] to examine **nghẹt mũi** $[nget^6 mooy^4]$ to have a stuffy nose **nghỉ ngơi** $[ngee^4 nguhy^1]$ to rest, to relax **nhức đầu** $[nh \ddot{u}k^2 dohw^5]$ to have a headache **nôn** $\lceil nohn^1 \rceil$ to throw up **số mũi** $[shoh^4 mooy^3]$ to have a runny nose

tập thể dục $[tup^6 theh^4 yookp^6]$ to exercise

uống thuốc [$wohng^2$ thwoh k^2] to take

medication

emergency room

răng $\lceil r \breve{a} n g^1 \rceil$ tooth

sức khoẻ [shŭk² khwe⁴] health

thuốc [thwohk²] medication

sốt $[shoht^2]$ fever

tim [teem1] heart

vai [vie¹] shoulder

tai $\lceil tie^1 \rceil$ ear

CHAPTER 10

The Main Dialects of Vietnamese

Holidays and Entertainment



I. THE MAIN DIALECTS OF VIETNAMESE

As mentioned in the Introduction Chapter, there are eight groups of dialects in the Vietnamese language, spreading from the North to the Central and the South. However, speakers tend to generally identify only three major groups as the northern dialects, the central dialects and the southern dialects. While all the dialects share the same syntactic characteristics, they differ considerably in accent (tones, consonants and vowels) and vocabulary.

1. Differences in Accent

a. Tones. Overall, it can be observed that the tone systems vary considerably from north to south. The tones in the northern dialects are higher than those in the central and southern dialects. Central Vietnam is so long a stretch that its dialects vary sharply with regard to tones. The tone systems in the upper part of the region are generally low, whereas those in the lower part are higher and become roughly at the same level as those of the dialects in the south.

AUDIO 1

Samples of tone differences. Listen to the following sentences read in three regional accents from (a) Hanoi (northern), (b) Hue (central) and (c) Saigon (southern).

 Chúng tôi sẽ cùng đi xem kịch với nhau vào cuối tuần. choongm² tohy¹ she⁴ koongm⁵ dee¹ sem¹ keech⁶ vuhy² nhăw¹ vaw⁵ kwohy² twun⁵ We will go see a play together this weekend.

- Mồng một Tết là ngày đầu năm âm lịch.
 mohngm⁵ moht⁶ teht² la⁵ ngăy⁵ dohw⁵ năm¹ um¹ leech⁶
 Day One of Tet is the first day of the lunar year.
- 3. Các bạn định làm gì vào kỳ nghỉ lễ Giáng Sinh sắp tới? kak² ban⁵ deenh⁶ lam⁵ yee⁵ vaw⁵ kee⁵ ngee⁴ yang² sheenh¹ shăp² tuhy² What do you guys plan to do during the up-coming Christmas break?

While most northern dialects have all the six tones, the central and southern dialects recognize only five tones. The most outstanding difference is the distinction between the mid-high, rising, glottalized tone (as in $\mathbf{n\tilde{w}a}$ [$n\breve{u}uh^3$] "more") and the mid-low, rising tone (as in $\mathbf{n\tilde{w}a}$ [$n\breve{u}uh^4$] "half") in the northern dialects, while these two tones are pronounced as the latter in the central and southern dialects.

b. Consonants

- The "**z**" sound exists only in the northern dialects, while it is replaced by the "**y**" sound in the central and southern dialects. Thus, the noun **da** "skin" is pronounced in the north as $[za^1]$ and in the central and the south as $[ya^1]$.
- In the northern dialects, there is only one sound " \mathbf{z} " for the spellings \mathbf{d} , \mathbf{gi} and \mathbf{r} , so the three words \mathbf{dao} "knife," \mathbf{giao} "to deliver" and \mathbf{rao} "to announce" are all pronounced as $[zaw^1]$; while in the central and the south, the first two words are pronounced as $[yaw^1]$ and the third word as $[raw^1]$.
- There is no distinction between the "**s**" sound and the "**sh**" sound in most northern dialects. These two sounds, on the other hand, are clearly distinguished in several central and southern dialects. For example, in those dialects, **xay** "to grind" is pronounced as $[s\breve{a}y^2]$ and **say** "to be drunk" is pronounced as $[sh\breve{a}y^2]$.
- Northern speakers also make no distinction between a word like **châu** [*chohw*¹] "continent" and **trâu** [*trohw*¹] "water buffalo," pronouncing both words as [*chohw*¹]. In most central and southern regions, two distinct consonants are pronounced for each of the words.
- If some initial consonants merge into each other as described above in the northern dialects, then several final consonants tend to merge into each other in the central and southern dialects. For example, the final "t" and "k" sounds, while pronounced nice and differently in the north, are both treated as just the "k" sound in the central and the south: cát [kat²] "sand" and các [kak²] "all" both sound like [kak²] in these regions. Also, the final nasals "n" and "ng" (before unrounded vowels) are distinct in the northern dialects but are treated as just "ng" in the central and southern dialects: both the nouns lan [lan¹] "orchid" and lang [lang¹] "wolf" sound alike as [lang¹] in these dialects.
- Lip rounding co-pronunciation of final consonants can also be observed as another distinctive characteristic between the northern dialects and the central and southern dialects (in addition to the general lip rounding co-pronunciation in all dialects discussed in Chapter 4). Those cases involve the final **t** and **n** that follow **ô** or **u**, where northern speakers do not do lip rounding

co-pronunciation like central and southern speakers: $\mathbf{s\tilde{o}t} [shoht^2]$ "fever," $\mathbf{s\hat{u}t} [shoot^2]$ "to get loose," **môn** [mohn¹] "subject," **mun** [moon¹] "ebony." In the central and southern dialects, these words sound like a "p" sound is added to the t, and an "m" sound is added to the n: sốt $\lceil shohtp^2 \rceil$, **sút** $\lceil shootp^2 \rceil$, **môn** $\lceil mohnm^1 \rceil$, **mun** $\lceil moonm^1 \rceil$.

AUDIO 2

Dialectal pronunciations of consonants. Listen to the pronunciation of the initial and final consonants in (a) the northern dialects and (b) in the central and southern dialects in the following chart:

Initial consonants	1. dao "knife" – giao "to deliver" – rao "to announce" 2. xay "to grind" – say "drunk" 3. châu "continent" – trâu "water buffalo"
Final consonants	4. cát "sand" – các "all" 5. lan "orchid" – lang "wolf" 6. sốt "fever" – sút "to slip" – môn "subject" – mun "ebony"

Vowels. Vowels also vary richly from the north to the south. Some dialects in the coastal region of south-central Vietnam (Quang Nam and Quang Ngãi) even have a very distinct system of vowels and diphthongs, a discussion of which is beyond the scope of this book. In general, however, the main difference between the vowel system of the northern dialects and that of the central and southern dialects is that the latter two fail to distinguish between closed vowels and open vowels in many instances. For example, while northern speakers pronounced the pair \hat{tay} [tay^1] "west" (with a closed vowel) and tay [tay^1] "hand" (with a less closed vowel), most south-central and southern speakers would just pronounce these words with one and the same vowel (the less closed one) as $[tay^1]$. Another common merge of vowels in the central and southern regions is between \mathbf{o} (open vowel) and $\hat{\mathbf{o}}$ (closed vowel) when they are followed by **c** or **ng**. Thus **cốc** $\lceil kohkp^2 \rceil$ "glass" and **cóc** $\lceil kahkp^2 \rceil$ "toad," or **công** [kohngm¹] "peacock" and **cong** [kahngm¹] "curved," are supposed to contain a closed and an open vowel respectively, which northern speakers pronounce very clearly, but these words are all pronounced alike with an open vowel.

AUDIO 3

Dialectal pronunciations of vowels. Listen to the pronunciation of the vowels in the following words in the (a) northern dialects and (b) south-central and southern dialects.

- 1. tây "west" tay "hand"
- 2. **nấm** "mushroom" **nắm** "to hold"
- 3. **cốc** "glass" **cóc** "toad"
- 4. **công** "peacock" **cong** "curved"

2. Lexical differences

Vocabulary is also a rich source that helps identify the region from which a speaker comes.

AUDIO 4

Regional vocabulary Listen to the following words and phrases from the (a) Hanoi dialect (northern), Hue dialect (central) and (c) Saigon dialect (southern).

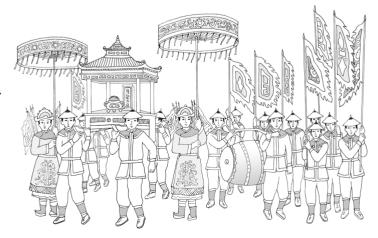
	Hanoi dialect	Hue dialect	Saigon dialect	Meaning
1	đấy	nớ	đó	that
1	day^2	nuh^2	dah²	tnat
2	bát	đọi	chén	bowl
	bat ²	doy^6	chen ²	DOWI
3	thế	rứa	vậy	00
	theh²	rйuh²	vay ⁵	so
4	nem rán	ram	chả giò	eggroll
4	nem¹ zan²	ram¹	cha ⁴ yah ⁵	eggion
5	muôi	môi	vá	ladle
	mwohy¹	$mohy^1$	va ²	laule
6	mę	mạ	má	mother
	me ⁶	ma ⁶	ma ²	mother
7	ngã	bổ	té	to fall
/	nga³	boh ⁴	te ²	to fair
8	hôm nay	bữa ni	bữa nay	today
	hohm¹ năy¹	bŭuh³ nee¹	bŭuh³ năy¹	today
9	xấu hổ	dį	mắc cỡ	shy
	sohw² hoh⁴	yee ⁶	măk² kuh³	5119
10	nằm mơ	nằm chộ	nằm chiêm bao	to dream
10	năm ⁵ muh ¹	năm⁵ choh⁵	năm ⁵ chyehm¹ baw¹	to aream

II. PRACTICE

AUDIO 5

A. Holidays in Vietnam

Listen to the following reading. Afterwards, read it again on your own.



Ngoài hai ngày lễ quốc tế là Tết tây (hay Tết Dương lịch) và Giáng Sinh, người Việt Nam còn mừng các ngày lễ truyền thống của mình. Ngày lễ quan trong nhất là Tết Nguyên Đán (còn gọi là Tết ta). Đây là ngày 1 tháng Giêng, tháng đầu tiên tính theo năm âm lịch. Vào ngày 10 tháng Ba âm lịch, cả nước làm lễ giỗ tổ Hùng Vương là những vi vua đã khai sinh ra nước Việt Nam, lúc bấy giờ được đặt tên là Văn Lang.

Một ngày lễ tôn giáo lớn khác ngoài Giáng Sinh là lễ Phật Đản (ngày 15 tháng Tư âm lịch) được các phật tử tưng bừng kỷ niệm hằng năm. Trẻ em Việt Nam cũng có một ngày lễ riêng, đó là Tết Trung Thu, nhằm ngày 15 tháng Tám âm lịch, lúc mặt trặng tròn và đẹp nhất trong năm. Vào buổi tối Tết Trung Thu, trong khi các em thiếu nhi vui vẻ đi rước đèn trong xóm hay trên hè phố, người lớn cũng mừng ngày lễ này qua tách trà thơm và những chiếc bánh nướng, bánh dẻo đặc biệt dành cho ngày lễ này.

 $ngwie^5 hie^1 ng\ddot{a}y^5 leh^3 kwohk^2 teh^2 la^5 teht^2 tay^1 (h\ddot{a}y^1 teht^2 d\ddot{u}uhng^1 leech^6) va^5 yang^2 sheenh^1$ ngŭuhy⁵ vyeh⁶ nam¹ kahn⁵ mŭng⁵ kak² ngăy⁵ leh³ trwyehn⁵ thohngm² koouh⁴ meenh⁵ // ngăy⁵ leh³ kwan¹ trahngm6 nhut² la⁵ teht² ngwyehn¹ dan² (kahn⁵ goy6 la⁵ teht² ta¹) // day¹ la⁵ ngăy⁵ moht⁶ thang² yehng¹ thang² dohw⁵ tyehn¹ teenh² thew¹ năm¹ um¹ leech⁶ // vaw⁵ ngăy⁵ mŭuhy⁵ thang² ba¹ um¹ leech6 kah⁴ nŭuhk² lam5 leh⁴ yoh3 toh⁴ hoongm5 vŭuhng¹ la5 nhŭng³ vee6 voouh¹ $da^3 khie^1 sheenh^1 ra^1 nŭuhk^2 vyeht^6 nam^1 lukp^2 bay^2 yuh^5 dŭuhk^6 dăt^6 tehn^1 la^5 văn^1 lang^1$

moht⁶ ngăy⁵ leh³ tohn¹ yaw² luhn² khak² ngwie⁵ yang² sheenh¹ la⁵ leh³ fut⁶ dan⁴ (ngăy⁵ $m\ddot{u}uhy^5 l\ddot{a}m^1 thang^2 t\ddot{u}^1 um^1 leech^6) d\ddot{u}uhk^5 kak^2 fut^6 t\ddot{u}^4 t\ddot{u}ng^1 b\ddot{u}ng^5 kee^4 nyehm^6 h\ddot{a}ng^5 n\ddot{a}m^1$ // tre⁴ em¹ vyeht⁶ nam¹ koongm³ kah² moht⁶ ngăy⁵ leh³ ryehng¹ dah² la⁵ teht² troongm¹ thoo¹ nhăm⁵ ngăy⁵ mŭuhy⁵ lăm¹ thang² tam² um¹ leech⁶ lookp² măt⁶ trăng¹ trahn⁵ va⁵ dep⁶ nhut² trahngm¹ năm¹ // vaw⁵ bwohy⁴ tohy² teht² troongm¹ thoo¹ trahngm¹ khee¹ kak² em¹ thvehw² nhee¹ vooy¹ ve⁴ dee¹ rŭuhk² den⁵ trahngm¹ sahm² hăy¹ trehn¹ he⁵ foh² ngŭuhy⁵ luhn² koongm³ $m \ddot{u} n g^5 n g \ddot{a} y^5 leh^3 n \ddot{a} y^5 kwa^1 t \ddot{a} ch^2 t ra^5 t huhm^1 va^5 nh \ddot{u} n g^3 c hyehk^2 b \ddot{a} nh^2 n \ddot{u} uhng^2 b \ddot{a} nh^2 yew^4$ dăk⁶ byeht⁶ yănh⁵ chah¹ ngăy⁵ leh³ năy⁵

"In addition to the two international holidays, which are the "Western New Year" (i.e. New Year's Day) and Christmas, Vietnamese people also celebrate their own traditional holidays. The most important holiday is the Lunar New Year (also called "our New Year"). It falls on the first day of the first month according to the lunar calendar. On the 10th day of the third lunar month, the whole country commemorates the death anniversary of the Hung kings, who founded Vietnam in the name of Van Lang.

Another big religious holiday besides Christmas—Buddha's Birthday (on the 15th of the fourth lunar month)—is jubilantly celebrated by Buddhists every year. Vietnamese children, too, have their own holiday, namely the Mid-Autumn festival, which falls on the 15th day of the eighth lunar month, when the full moon is in its most beautiful shape of the year. In the evening of the festival, while the kids are merrily walking in their lantern parade through the neighborhoods or on the sidewalks, the adults themselves also celebrate this holiday over a cup of aromatic tea and the baked or sticky rice mooncakes made exclusively for this event."

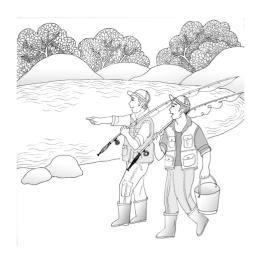
B. Reading comprehens	sio	n
-----------------------	-----	---

Answer the following questions regarding the reading above and give *complete answers* in Vietnamese.

- 1. Ngày lễ quan trọng nhất ở Việt Nam là ngày lễ nào? ngăy⁵ leh³ kwan¹ trahngm6 nhut² uh⁴ vyeht6 nam¹ la⁵ ngăy⁵ leh³ naw⁵ What is the most important holiday in Vietnam? Lễ giỗ tổ Hùng Vương nhằm vào tháng mấy âm lịch? $leh^3 yoh^3 toh^4 hoongm^5 v uhng^1 nh am^5 vaw^5 thang^2 may^2 um^1 leech^6$ Which lunar month does the Hung Kings' death anniversary fall in? 3. Tên đầu tiên của nước Việt Nam là gì? tehn¹ dohw⁵ tyehn¹ koouh⁴ nŭuhk² vyeht⁶ nam¹ la⁵ yee⁵ What was the first name of Vietnam? Tết Trung Thu là ngày lễ dành cho ai? teht² troongm¹ thoo¹ la⁵ ngăy⁵ leh³ yănh⁵ chah¹ ie¹
- 4. For whom is the Mid-Autumn festival?
- Người ta ăn loại bánh gì vào Tết Trung Thu? ngŭuh⁵ ta¹ ăn¹ lwie⁶ bănh² yee⁵ vaw⁵ teht² troongm¹ thoo¹ What kind of cakes do people eat on Mid-Autumn festival?

C. Writing sentences

Refer to the sections of Notes on Grammar and Active Vocabulary to write up sentences in Vietnamese according to the suggestions in parentheses.



1. (We will not go to the movies tonight because it is raining.) 2. (If the weather is nice tomorrow, do you guys want to go fishing?) (It's too windy outside. We are just staying home and watching TV.) 3. (There will be a storm this weekend, so my friends and I will not go hunting.) 4. 5. (I usually go for a walk with my dog on warm days.)

III. NOTES ON GRAMMAR

Weather sentence constructions. Weather topics can be expressed in various constructions.

Speakers usually use the noun \mathbf{troi} [$truhy^5$] ("heaven, sky") as the subject of a sentence that describes the weather. This subject can be followed by a weather verb: **trời mưa** [*truhy*⁵ *mǔuh*¹] ("it rains") or an adjective: **trời nắng** [truhy⁵ năng²] ("it's sunny"), **trời lạnh** [truhy⁵ lănh⁶] ("it's cold").

- Alternatively, speakers can go straight to a verb or and adjective without using a subject at all: mwa lón quá! [mŭuh¹ luhn² kwa²] ("it's raining so hard!"); nóng thật! [nahngm² thut6] ("it's really hot").
- The verb **có** [kah^2] ("to have," or equivalent to the expression "there is/are") is also used with or without the subject **tròi** and followed by a weather noun: **đêm nay (tròi) có bão** [$dehm^1$ $n\check{a}y^1$ $truhy^5$ kah^2 baw^3] ("there's going to be a storm tonight"); **hôm qua (tròi) có gió lớn lắm** [$hohm^1$ kwa^1 $truhy^5$ kah^2 yah^2 $luhn^2$ $l\check{a}m^2$] ("there were really high winds yesterday").
- Like many terms in other categories, a weather word in Vietnamese can be used as more than one part of speech. For example, **mwa** [mŭuh¹] can be used as a noun ("rain"): **vùng này có mwa nhiều không?** [voongm⁵ nǎy⁵ kah² mữuh¹ nhyehw⁵ khohngm¹] ("is there a lot of rain in this region?"), an adjective ("rainy"): **mùa mwa năm nay dài hơn năm ngoái** [moouh⁵ mŭuh¹ nǎm¹ nāy¹ yie⁵ huhn¹ năm¹ ngwie²] ("this year's rainy season is longer than that of last year"), or a verb ("to rain"), **bên ngoài trời đang mwa** [behn¹ ngwie⁵ truhy⁵ dang¹ mǔuh¹] ("it's raining outside").

IV. PROVERB

AUDIO 6

GIÀU NGHÈO BA MƯỢI TẾT MỚI HAY.

yăw⁵ ngew⁵ ba¹ mŭuhy¹ teht² muhy² hăy¹

- **Literal meaning:** Whether a family is wealthy or not will not be known until the last day of the Lunar year.
- **Figurative meaning:** The way some people make preparations for the Lunar New Year can reveal their family's financial status.
- **Cultural implication:** Most families cannot hide their financial status when the Lunar New Year comes around. People spend as much as they can afford for this important holiday.



V. ACTIVE VOCABULARY

DANH TÙ' - NOUNS

bão $[baw^3]$ storm

bãi biển [bie³ bvehn⁴] beach

biển [byehn⁴] sea

Giáng Sinh [yang² sheenh¹] Christmas

gió $\lceil vah^2 \rceil$ wind

khí hâu [khee² hohw⁶] climate

lễ Phật Đản [leh³ fut6 dan4] Buddha's holiday

măt trăng $[mat^6 trana^1]$ moon

măt trời [*măt*⁶ *truhy*⁵] sun

 $\mathbf{mav} \lceil mav^1 \rceil$ cloud

mwa [mŭuh¹] rain

mwa phùn [*mŭuh*¹ *foon*⁵] drizzle

ngày lễ $\lceil ng \ddot{a} y^5 leh^3 \rceil$ holiday

sao [shaw¹] star

sấm [*shum*²] thunder

sét [shet²] lightning

sương mù [shữuhng¹ moo⁵] fog

Tết tây [teht² tay¹] New Year's

Tết [teht²] Lunar New Year holiday

Tết Trung Thu [teht² troongm¹ thoo¹]

Mid-Autumn festival

thời tiết [thuhy⁵ tyeht²] weather

trái đất [trie² dut²] Earth

tròi [*truhy*⁵] sky; heaven

tuyết [twyeht²] snow

TÍNH TỪ – ADIECTIVES

âm u $\lceil um^1 oo^1 \rceil$ cloudy

ẩm thấp $[um^4 thup^2]$ humid

ấm áp $[um^2 ap^2]$ warm

khô $\lceil khoh^1 \rceil$ dry

lanh [lănh⁶] cold

 $\mathbf{mát} [mat^2]$ cool

 \mathbf{n} áng [năng 2] sunny

nóng [nahngm²] hot

wớt $\lceil \breve{u}uht^2 \rceil$ wet

ĐÔNG TỪ - VERBS

đánh bài $\lceil danh^2 \rceil$ to play cards

đánh cờ $\lceil danh^2 kuh^5 \rceil$ to play chess

đi biển $\lceil dee^1 \ byehn^4 \rceil$ to go to the beach

đi cắm trại [dee¹ kăm² trie⁶] to go camping

đi câu [dee¹ kohw¹] to go fishing

đi dao $[dee^1 yaw^6]$ to go for a walk

đi săn $[dee^1 shăn^1]$ to go hunting

nghe nhac $[nge^1 nhak^6]$ to listen to music

 $\dot{\mathbf{o}}$ **nhà** $[uh^4 nha^5]$ to stay home

xem phim $\lceil sem^1 feem^1 \rceil$ to watch a movie

xem truyền hình [sem¹ trwyehn⁵ heenh⁵]

to watch TV

ANSWER KEY TO PRACTICE EXERCISES

Chapter 1

A. Spelling out words

- 2. dễ "easy": zay/yay ay dấu ngã
- 2. khó "difficult": kah hat aw dấu sắc
- 3. lớn "big": ella uh enna dấu sắc
- 4. nhỏ "small": enna hat aw dấu hỏi
- 5. rông "spacious, wide": era oh enna jay dấu nặng
- 6. hep "narrow": hat eh pay dấu nặng
- 7. dài "long": zay/yay ah ee dấu huyền
- 8. **ngắn** "short": **enna jay ah** (with high pitch) **enna –** *dấu sắc*
- 9. sớm "early": es uh emma dấu sắc
- 10. trễ "late": tay era dấu ngã

B. Letter and accent mark recognition

- 1. bàn "table"
- 2. ghế "chair"
- 3. giường "bed"
- 4. cửa "door"
- 5. nhà "house"
- 6. phòng "room"
- 7. **sân** "yard"
- 8. vườn "garden"
- 9. cho "market"
- 10. **võng** "hammock"

CHAPTER 2

A. Recognizing vowels

- $[a] \mathbf{A} [b] \mathbf{\check{A}} [c] \mathbf{\hat{A}}$
- 1. [a] cam "orange"
- 2. [c] cân "to weigh"
- 3. [b] **căng** "to stretch"
- 4. [b] canh "soup" (The spelling \check{a} is not shown)
- $[a] \mathbf{E} [b] \hat{\mathbf{E}}$
- 5. [a] **tem** "stamp"
- 6. [b] quên "to forget"
- 7. [a] **quen** "familiar"
- 8. [b] **đêm** "night"
- [a] $\mathbf{0} [b] \hat{\mathbf{0}} [c] \mathbf{0}'$
- 9. [c] **com** "steam rice"
- 10. [a] **con** "child"
- 11. [a] cong "curved"
- 12. [b] công "peacock"

- [a] **U** [b] **U**'
- 13. [a] **cung** "bow"
- 14. [b] sung "swollen"
- 15. [b] lung "back"
- 16. [b] cung "dear"
- [a] I [b] Ê
- 17. [a] **tim** "heart"
- 18. [b] kênh "canal"
- 19. [a] sinh "to be born"
- 20. [b] **bênh** "to defend"

B. Using vocalic marks

- 1. nam "south"
- 2. năm "five"
- 3. tăm "toothpick"
- 4. mâm "tray"
- 5. câm "mute"
- 6. kem "cream"
- 7. thêm "to add"
- 8. nên "should"

- 9. đông "crowded"
- 10. **tôm** "shrimp"
- 11. ong "bee"
- 12. son "to paint"
- 13. hur "broken"
- 14. xu "coin"
- 15. **tu** "private"

CHAPTER 3

E. Objects and possession

- 1. Quyển vở này là của ai?
- 2. Con chó đó là của ba tôi.
- 3. Đôi giày kia là của mẹ tôi.
- 4. Chiếc vớ này không phải là của tôi.
- 5. Cái quần này là của anh, phải không?
- F. Writing sentences
- 1. Chiếc xe của cô là màu gì?
- 2. Trái cam này không phải là của tôi.
- 3. Con mèo đó có phải là của anh không?
- 4. Cái đồng hồ này là của ai?

- 6. Cái kéo kia không phải là của chúng tôi.
- 7. Con dao đó là của anh ấy hay của cô ấy?
- 8. Trái banh này có phải là của các anh không?
- 9. Chiếc xe đạp kia là của Nam.
- 10. Toà nhà này là của bà Lan.
- 5. Cái kính đó là của cô ấy, phải không?
- 6. Cuốn từ điển kia là màu nâu hay màu xám?
- 7. Đôi giày này là của bạn tôi.
- 8. Ngôi nhà thờ đó là của họ.

CHAPTER 4

C. Lip-rounding co-articulation

- 1. lăng "mausoleum"
- 2. (lông "feather")
- 3. **[lung** "far away"]
- 4. lang "wolf"
- 5. lung "back"
- 6. luống "bed (of plants)"

- 7. **loc** "to filter"
- 8. **luc** "to forage"
- 9. lat "tasteless"
- 10. **lot** "light (color")
- 11. luộc "to boil"
- 12. luc "strength"

D. Same spelling, different pronunciation of vowel due to the final consonant letters

Column A	Column B
Open vowel	Brief vowel
cáng "stretcher" – cán "handle" – cám "bran" – cát	cắp "to grip"– cánh "wing"– cắn "to bite" – cách
"sand" – các "plural marker"	"method"– cắm "to pitch"– cắt "to cut"

F. At the fast food counter

Nhân viên Chào ông! Ông muốn mua món gì?

Khách Chào bà! Cho tôi một ổ bánh mì thịt nướng.

Nhân viên Ông cần gì nữa không?

Khách Làm ơn cho tôi một phần bánh cuốn nhân tôm và một phần xôi đậu đen.

CHAPTER 5

B. Tones and accent marks

1.	quần tây	"trousers, pants"	9.	áo thun	"T-shirt"
2.	áo đầm	"dress"	10.	cỡ nhỏ	"small size"
3.	nón lá	"conical hat"	11.	găng tay	"gloves"
4.	cà-vạt	"necktie"	12.	váy ngắn	"miniskirt"
5.	áo lót	"undershirt"	13.	áo dài	"Vietnamese dress"
6.	áo quần	"clothing"	14.	áo khoác	"jacket"
7.	vớ dài	"stockings"	15.	mũ len	"woolen cap"
8.	giàv thể thao	"tennis shoes"			

F. Using numbers

- 1. Tôi mặc quần tây dài một trăm lẻ một phân.
- 2. Cái đồng hồ vàng này giá mười lăm triệu đồng.
- 3. Các đôi giày cao gót kia giá không dưới bốn trăm đô-la.
- 4. Những cái áo dài này dài chín mươi lăm phân.
- 5. Sợi dây chuyền bạc này giá hai ngàn ba trăm sáu mươi mốt đô-la à?

CHAPTER 6

A. Specific questions and interrogative words

- 1. Q: Me đang ủi quần áo cho ai?
- 2. Q: Em của cô mặc quần áo khi nào?
- 3. Q: Chị thường đi ngủ vào lúc mấy giờ?
- 4. Q: Anh ấy làm việc bao nhiêu tiếng một tuần?
- 5. Q: Mỗi buổi sáng cô Mai trang điểm mất bao lâu?
- 6. Q: Cuối tuần này chúng ta sẽ đi đâu?
- 7. Q: Anh Huy làm việc ở đâu?
- 8. Q: Tại sao sáng nay cô Thuý đi làm trễ?
- 9. Q: Anh hoc trường đai hoc nào?
- 10. Q: Maria nói tiếng gì?
- 11. Q: Dao này việc buôn bán của ông thế nào?
- 12. **Q:** Anh mở cái điện thoại này **làm sao?**

C. Telling time

- 1. 12:05 p.m. Mười hai giờ năm phút sáng.
- 2. **6:43 a.m.** (a) Sáu giờ bốn mươi ba phút sáng.
- (b) Bảy giờ kém mười bảy phút sáng.

- 3. 8:30 p.m.
- (a) Tám giờ ba mươi phút tối.
- (b) Tám giờ rưỡi tối.

- 4. 9:45 p.m.
- (a) Chín giờ bốn mươi lăm phút tối.
- (b) Mười giờ kém mười lăm phút tối.

- 5. 11:28 p.m.
- Mười một giờ hai mươi tám phút đêm.

CHAPTER 7

B. Vocabulary

- 1. Ngân hàng Quốc Gia nằm trên đường Nguyễn Du, phải không, cô?
- 2. Ở **góc đường** trước mặt có một tiệm hoa lớn.
- 3. Ông có thấy cái **bùng binh** đằng kia không? Đó là ngã sáu Nguyễn Tri Phương.
- 4. Cô nên rất cẩn thận khi băng qua đường ở đây
- 5. Từ **khách san** đến công viên lái xe mất bao lâu?
- 6. Đến chỗ đèn giao thông chị queo ngược lại nhé.
- 7. Tôi phải đi bộ hay đi xe buýt để đến chơ Bến Thành?
- 8. Bà có thể đón tắc-xi ngay tai **phi trường**.
- 9. Nếu lạc đường, chị có thể hỏi những viên cảnh sát giao thông kia.
- 10. Làm ơn cho tôi xem thông hành.

C. Types of questions

- 1. (b) Tiệm sách nằm ở đâu?
- 2. (b) Xin lỗi cô, ở đây có quầy đổi ngoại tệ nào không?
- 3. (b) Anh ơi, xe buýt này đi nhà thờ Đức Bà, phải không?
- 4. (a) Tại sao hôm nay anh không rút tiền trong máy được?
- 5. (a) Lối này là lối vào khu vực các chuyến bay đi hay các chuyến bay đến?

D. Imperative sentences

- 1. Đừng quên trả phòng trước 10 giờ nhé.
- 2. Hãy chon hãng hàng không của chúng tôi cho chuyến du lịch của quý vi.
- 3. Cô tìm vài địa điểm du lịch **giùm** tôi **đi**!
- 4. Xin đừng dùng điện thoại cầm tay trong phòng này.
- 5. **Xin mời** quý vị qua phòng chờ cho chuyến bay kế tiếp.
- 6. Các ban **cứ** đi ngoạn cảnh trước **đi**!
- 7. **Xin** mọi người **cứ** tư nhiên lấy thức ăn trên bàn **nhé!**
- 8. Làm ơn mua **giùm** chúng tôi hai vé xe đò đi Vũng Tàu **nhé**!

CHAPTER 8

A. Aspect markers

- 1. Dì dượng của tôi đã lấy nhau được ba năm nay.
- 2. Chi tôi **sẽ** sinh con đầu lòng vào cuối năm.
- 3. Ông ngoại của anh ấy **vừa** mất ở Sài Gòn.
- 4. Bố mẹ của cô đang sống ở thành phố nào?
- 5. Anh chị **sắp** làm đám cưới với nhau, phải không?
- 6. Anh Dũng **vừa** cầu hôn với chị Loan cách đây hai tuần.
- 7. Mẹ và các dì đang nấu nướng để chuẩn bị làm đám giỗ ông ngoại.

CHAPTER 9

A. Particles

- 1. Hôm nay bà cảm thấy thế nào a?
- 2. Thưa cô y tá, em bị sổ mũi và ho.
- 3. Em trai tôi bị sốt cao, còn em gái tôi **thì** bị cúm.
- 4. Bác sĩ **mà** biết chi không ăn kiêng, ông ấy sẽ không hài lòng đâu.
- 5. Một tuần anh tập thể dục mấy lần **vậy?**

A. Adverbs of degree

- 1. Ba tôi đi ngủ đúng giờ **lắm.**
- 2. Thưa bác sĩ, lưng tôi đau **quá** (or **quá** đau).
- 3. Mẹ uống thuốc bổ **thật** đều đặn (*or* đều đặn **thật**).
- 4. Chi tôi **rất** sơ đi nha sĩ.
- 5. Anh ấy cảm thấy **hơi** mệt.
- 6. Tôi thấy việc ăn uống bổ dưỡng là khá gay go.

CHAPTER 10

B. Writing sentences

- 1. Tối nay chúng tôi sẽ không đi xem phim vì trời đang mưa.
- 2. Nếu ngày mai thời tiết đẹp, các bạn có muốn đi câu cá không?
- 3. Bên ngoài trời gió quá. Chúng tôi chỉ ở nhà xem truyền hình (ti-vi).
- 4. Cuối tuần này sẽ có bão nên các bạn tôi và tôi sẽ không đi săn.
- 5. Tôi thường đi dạo với con chó của tôi vào những ngày trời ấm áp.

VIETNAMESE-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

à 1 part (used in a tag question) • cô là người Nhật à? are you Japanese? 2 interj oh • à, anh có rảnh không? oh, are you free? a part (used at the end of a statement for

respect or friendliness) • **không dám ạ** please don't mention it

ai pron 1 who • ai đó? who's there? 2 anyone
• chuyện đó ai cũng làm được anyone can do that • không ai no one

anh¹ 1 *n* brother 2 *pron* you/male

Anh² *n, adj* English • *tiếng Anh* English language

anh ấy pron he, him

anh/chi/em họ n cousin

ảnh *n* photo • *chụp ảnh* to take pictures

ánh nắng *n* sunlight

ánh sáng n light

áo choàng n coat

áo dài n Vietnamese dress • mặc áo dài to wear a Vietnamese dress

áo đầm *n* dress

áo khoác n blazer

áo len n sweater

áo sơ-mi *n* shirt

áo thun n T-shirt

áo vét *n* suit jacket

Ă

ăn ν to eat • *cô thích ăn món gì?* what dish would you like to eat?

ăn mặc v to dress (in general)

ăn nói v to speak (in general)

ăn sáng ν to have breakfast

ăn kiêng v to be on a diet

ăn tối ν to have dinner • *cô thường ăn tối* νὰο lúc mấy giờ? what time do you usually have dinner?

ăn tráng miệng ν to have dessert

ăn trưa *v* to have lunch

ăn vặt ν to snack

Â

âm *adj* negative, minus • *hai mươi độ âm* minus twenty degrees

âm lịch *n* Lunar calendar • *Tết âm lịch* Lunar New Year

âm thanh *n* sound • *âm thanh nổi* surround sound

ấm adj warm, lukewarm • áo ấm sweater
ấm áp adj warm • thời tiết ấm áp warm
weather

ẩm *adj* 1 humid 2 moist

àm ĩ *adj* noisy • *cái gì mà àm ĩ vậy?* what's the commotion?

ẩm thực n cuisine

ấn *v* to press • **ấn nút** to press a button **ẩn** *v* to hide • **ẩn mình** to hide oneself

В

ba *n* 1 father 2 three

bà 1 n Mrs. 2 pron you (female)

bà ngoại *n* maternal grandmother

bà nội *n* paternal grandmother

bác (gái) *n* wife of one's uncle (*father's older* brother)

bác (trai) *n* paternal uncle (*father's older* brother)

bác sĩ *n* doctor • *bác sĩ y khoa* medical doctor

bài n playing card • đánh bài to play cards
bài hát n song • hát một bài to sing a song
bài học n lesson • học bài to learn one's
lesson

bài tập n exercise • làm bài tập to do an exercise

ban đêm *n* night, nighttime **ban ngày** *n* day, daytime

bán ν to sell • **buôn bán** to do retail business

bàn *n* table • *bàn ăn* dining table

bàn chân n foot • bàn chân trái của tôi bi **đau** my left foot hurts

bàn tay *n* hand • *ngón tay* finger

bản *n* copy, cuốn • *bản sao* photocopy

bảng *n* 1 board 2 chart

ban *n* friend • *tình ban* friendship

bạn gái *n* girlfriend

ban hoc n classmate

ban thân *n* best friend

ban trai *n* boyfriend

banh *n* ball • *choi đá banh* to play soccer

bánh mì *n* bread; sandwich • *bánh mì thit* nauôi cold cut sandwich

bánh ngọt *n* pastry

bao n bag • bao giấy paper bag • bao ni-lông plastic bag

bao nhiêu adj/adv how many; how much • **món này bao nhiêu tiền?** how much is this item?

báo *n* newspaper • *nhật báo* daily newspaper **bão** n storm

bay ν to fly • **bay thẳng** to fly non-stop

bảy n & adj seven

bắc *n* & *adj* north; northern

băng qua đường ν to cross the street

bằng 1 adj equal 2 adv as • anh ấy cao bằng tôi he is as tall as I am

bắp n corn • bắp rang popcorn

bắp thịt *n* muscle

bắt ν to catch; to arrest

bận *adj* busy • *cô có bận không?* are you busy?

bên *n* side • *bên nào*? which side?

bên phải của *prep* on the right of

bên trái của *prep* on the left of

bệnh 1 *n* disease, sickness 2 *adj* sick

bệnh nhân *n* patient

bệnh viện *n* hospital

bệnh xá n clinic

bi quan *adj* pessimistic

bị v to be (in unfavorable situations) • **anh ấy**

bi bênh he is sick

biển *n* sea • *bãi biển* beach

biết ν to know • tôi không biết I don't know

bò *n* 1 cow 2 beef • *phở bò* beef noodles

bố/ba/cha *n* father • *bố ruột* biological father

bố chồng *n* father-in-law (of the woman)

bố dượng *n* stepfather

bố vợ *n* father-in-law (of the man)

bốn n & adj four

bún *n* rice vermicelli • *bún bò Huế* spicy beef and pork noodle soup • bún thịt nướng grilled pork with rice vermicelli

bung *n* abdomen, belly • *bi đầy bụng* to feel bloated

buổi chiều *n* afternoon

buổi sáng *n* morning

buổi tối *n* evening

buổi trưa *n* noon; early afternoon

buồn adj sad

buồn ngủ *adj* sleepy

buồn nôn adj nauseated • cảm thấy buồn

nôn to feel nauseated

bữa (ăn) sáng n breakfast • **ăn sáng** to have breakfast

bữa (ăn) tối *n* dinner • **ăn tối** to have dinner **bữa (ăn) trưa** *n* lunch • **ăn trưa** to have lunch

bưu điện *n* post office

\mathbf{C}

ca sĩ n singer

cà n tomato • cà tím eggplant

cá *n* fish • *cá hồi* salmon • *cá thu* tuna

cå 1 *adj* whole • *cå lóp* the whole class 2 *adv* at all •

tôi không hiểu gì cả I don't understand anything at all

các part (used before nouns or pronouns in the plural sense) • các sinh viên đại học the university students

các anh pron you (male/plural) chị ấy pron she, her các anh ấy pron they (male) **chim** *n* bird • **chim se** sparrow các bà pron you (female/plural) **chín**¹ adj, *n* nine • *mười chín* nineteen **các bà ấy** *pron* they (female/older/plural) chín² adj 1 ripe 2 cooked các chị pron you (female/plural) **cho** 1 *n* to give 2 *prep* for các chị ấy pron they (female/young/plural) **chó** *n* dog • *chó con* puppy các ông pron you (male/older/plural) chóng mặt adj dizzy • tôi thấy chóng mặt các ông ấy pron they (male/older/plural) *lắm* I feel very dizzy **cam** n, *adj* orange (*color*) • *trái cam* orange **chồng** *n* husband • *chồng cũ* ex-husband • (fruit) chồng sắp cưới fiancé cám on 1 v to thank 2 interj thanks • cám on **chú** *n* paternal uncle (*father's younger brother*) anh nhiều thank you very much **chủ** *n* 1 owner 2 boss • **chủ nhà** house owner: cảm n cold • bi cảm to have a cold landlord cảm thấy v to feel • cô cảm thấy thế nào? **chủ nhật** *n* Sunday how are you feeling? **chùa** *n* Buddhist temple **canh** *n* soup (Vietnamese style) • canh chua chung quanh prep around sweet and sour soup **chúng nó** *pron* they (*objects/kids*) chúng ta pron we, us (inclusive) cánh tay n arm **cảnh sát** *n* police officer **chúng tôi** *pron* we, us (*exclusive*) canh prep next to **chuối** *n* banana • *nải chuối* a hand of bananas cao adj tall, high **chuyến bay** *n* flight • **chuyến bay đêm** red**cao râu** *n* to shave eye flight cà-phê n coffee • cà-phê đen black coffee • **chuyến du lịch** *n* trip • *du lịch* to go on a trip *cà-phê sữa đá* iced coffee with milk **có** 1 v to have • anh chi có mấy cháu? how cắt v to cut • cắt tóc to have a hair cut many children do you have? 2 v there is/there **cắt cỏ** ν to cut the grass; to mow the lawn are • gần đây có trạm xăng nào không? **cấm** ν to prohibit • **cấm hút thuốc** is there a gas station nearby? 3 adv yes • có, no smoking (allowed) **tôi thích âm nhạc lắm** yes, I like music very **cần** ν to need • ông cần gì? how can I help you? much **cầu hôn** v to propose (marriage) **có chồng** v to be married (*for a woman*) **có vợ** v to be married (*for a man*) **cậu** *n* maternal uncle **chào** v to greet • **chào mừng quý vị** welcome! **con gái** *n* 1 girl 2 daughter **cháu (trai/gái)** *n* nephew/niece con trai n 1 boy 2 son **con dâu** *n* daughter-in-law **chân** *n* foot • *ngón chân* toe **con rể** *n* son-in-law **chật** *adj* tight chè n sweet soup dessert • chè ba màu còn conj and, as for • còn anh thì sao? how three-color dessert about you? chết v to die **cô** 1 *n* paternal aunt 2 *n* Miss 3 *pron* you (*fe***chỉ** *v* to show; to point **chỉ đường** *v* to show the way **cô giáo** *n* female teacher • *cô giáo tiểu học* **chi** 1 *n* older sister 2 *pron* you (*female*) elementary teacher

cô ấy pron she, her **cổ** *n* neck • **cổ áo** collar **công viên** *n* park • *công viên quốc gia* National Park công nhân n worker • công nhân xây dựng construction worker **co** *n* size • *what size shirt do you wear?* anh mặc áo cỡ nào? **cởi ra** v to take off (clothing) **com** *n* steam rice • *com chiên* fried rice **cũ** *adj* old • *người yêu cũ* ex-boyfriend or girlfriend của prep of • trang mạng của công ty the website of the company • căn nhà của Nam Nam's house của ai interr adj whose • cuốn sách này là *của ai?* whose book is this? **cúm** *n* flu • *bị cúm* to get the flu • *chích ngừa* **cúm** to have a flu shot cùng adv together • chúng tôi cùng đi ăn *trua* we went to lunch together

bad; OK

D **da** *n* skin • *bệnh ngoài da* skin disease **dao** *n* knife • *dao cao râu* razor blade **da** part 1 yes (respectful, polite) 2 (used before a statement respectfully) • da, đúng rồi that's correct da dày n stomach dai adj chewy, tough • thịt dai the meat is tough dài adj long • chiều dài length **dám** v dare **day** v to teach • $day d\tilde{o}$ to educate **dâu** n strawberry • $kem d \hat{a} u$ strawberry icecream dầu n oil • dầu ăn cooking oil • dầu hoả

cũng *adv* 1 also, too 2 pretty • *cũng được* not

than exclamation mark dâv chuvền n 1 necklace 2 chain dậy v to get up • ngồi dậy to sit up • thức dậy to wake up **déo** *adj* chewy • *bánh déo* snowskin moon**dép** *n* flip-flops dep adj flat **dì** *n* maternal aunt do prep by · kiểu xe này do Đức sản xuất this car model is made by the Germans **don dep** ν to clean up **doanh nhân** *n* businessman dở adj 1 bad 2 tasteless **dùng** v 1 to use 2 to have (meal, food) **dura** *n* melon **dựa hấu** *n* watermelon **dứa** *n* pineapple **dùa** *n* coconut • *nước dùa* coconut milk dùng v to stop • dùng lai! stop! dưới prep below; under **durong** *adj* 1 positive 2 plus **duong lich** *n* Solar calendar **durong** *n* husband of one's aunt

hỏi question mark • *dấu phẩy* comma • *dấu*

Ð

đá *n* rock, stone • *mỏm đá* cliff $\mathbf{d\tilde{a}}$ part (indicates a completed action) • $\hat{\mathbf{o}}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{g}$ đã gặp cô ấy chưa? have you met her? **đám cưới** *n* wedding **đám giỗ** *n* death anniversary **đàn** *n* string instrument • đàn tranh Vietnamese zither • đánh đàn to play a string instrument đàn bà n woman **đàn ông** n man **dang** part (indicates an on-going action) • **chi đang làm gì đó?** what are you doing? **đánh** *v* 1 to hit, to beat, to strike • **đánh máy** to type 2 to play • *đánh cò* to play chess

kerosene

dấu *n* mark • *dấu chấm* period • *dấu chấm*

đánh răng *v* to brush one's teeth **đau** 1 v to hurt 2 adj painful a hat **dau bung** v to have a stomachache **đau cổ hong** ν to have a sore throat **đau lưng** ν to have a backache **đắt** 1 *adj* expensive 2 *adv* well (*business*) • tiệm cô ấy bán đắt lắm her business is doing very well enough? đâu adv where • các em đi đâu vây? where are you going? • bưu điện nằm ở đâu? where is the post office located? đầu 1 n head 2 adj first • mới đầu at first đen adj black, dark **đèn** *n* light, lamp • **đèn cầy** candle đèn giao thông n traffic lights đep adj beautiful \mathbf{E} **đếm** *v* to count • *số đếm* cardinal number **đền** *n* temple **đến** ν to come, to arrive **đi** v 1 to go 2 to leave, to depart đi bác sĩ v to go to the doctor đi bô ν to walk đi câu v to go hunting siblings) đi dạo v to go for a walk đi làm v to go to work đi mua sắm ν to go shopping **đi ngủ** ν to go to bed **đi săn** ν to go hunting eo n waist **đĩa** n 1 plate 2 disk, disc • **đĩa hát** music disc Ê **điện** *n* electricity, power • *cúp điện* power shortage **điện thoại** *n* telephone • **điện thoại cầm tay** *n* cell phone teeth **điện tử** *n* electronics • đồng hồ điện tử smart watch **đó** adj & pron that • **đó là cái gì?** what's that? đỏ adj red **ếch** *n* frog **đói** *adj* hungry • *anh có đói không?* are you hungry?

đôi *n* pair, couple • **đôi giày** a pair of shoes

đối diện prep opposite, facing

đôi *v* to wear (on the head) • **đôi nón** to wear đông¹ n 1 east 2 winter đông² adj crowded • đám đông the crowd đồng hồ n watch, clock • đồng hồ treo tường wall clock đủ adj sufficient, enough • đủ chưa? is it **đũa** *n* chopstick • **đôi đũa** a pair of chopsticks **đúng** *adj* correct • **đúng** *không?* is it correct? được 1 v to be • ông ấy được tiền thưởng he was given a bonus 2 adj alright, OK • được rồi that's OK đường n 1 street 2 sugar **e** v to be afraid • *tôi e rằng xe buýt sẽ đến trễ* I'm afraid that the bus will be late **em chồng** *n* younger sibling of one's husband **em gái** *n* younger sister **em dâu** *n* wife of one's younger brother **em họ** *n* cousin (child of one's parent's younger **em rể** *n* husband of one's younger sister **em vo** *n* younger sibling of one's wife **em trai** *n* younger brother **én** *n* swallow $\hat{\mathbf{e}}^{\scriptscriptstyle 1}$ interj (informal) hey!

 $\hat{\mathbf{e}}^2$ adj sensitive • **b**i $\hat{\mathbf{e}}$ răng to have sensitive **ê ẩm** *adj* slightly painful ê chề adj shameful, embarrassed **ê hề** *adj* abundant (*food*) **ế** adj slow (retail business) **êm** *adj* smooth êm đẹp adj accordant, harmonious

êm đềm *adj* tranquil, peaceful

G	giữa prep 1 between 2 in the middle of
ga¹ n gas • <i>bếp ga</i> gas stove	giường <i>n</i> bed • <i>giường chiếc</i> single bed •
$\mathbf{ga}^2 n$ station • $\mathbf{ga} \times \mathbf{k} \mathbf{l} \mathbf{u} \mathbf{a}$ train station	<i>giường đôi</i> double bed
gái adj girl, female • cháu gái niece	gói <i>n</i> pack • <i>gói thuốc lá</i> pack of cigarettes
gan 1 n liver 2 adj (informal) gutsy	gởi n salad (Vietnamese style) • gởi đu đủ bờ
gà n chicken • gà con chick • gà mái hen • gà	khô green papaya salad with beef jerky
<i>trống</i> rooster	gọi v 1 to call 2 to order (food, drinks)
gạo <i>n</i> rice • <i>gạo nếp</i> sticky rice	$\mathbf{g}\tilde{\mathbf{o}}$ n wood
găng tay <i>n</i> glove	gối <i>n</i> pillow
gần adv & prep near	gồm có ν to consist of, to include
gầy adj skinny	
ghế <i>n</i> chair • <i>ghế bành</i> armchair	H
ghi tên v to check in, to register	hai <i>n</i> two • <i>hai mwoi</i> twenty
gì adj & pron what • bà nói gì? what did you	hái v to pick (from a plant or tree)
say?	hại <i>v</i> to harm • <i>có hại</i> harmful
gia đình n family • người trong gia đình	hàng n row, line • $x\acute{e}p$ $h\grave{a}ng$ to stand in line
family member	hãng hàng không <i>n</i> airline
già adj old, elderly • tuổi già old age	hành lý n luggage • hành lý xách tay car-
giá n price • giá bao nhiều? what's the price?	ry-on luggage
giả adj false, faux, fake • cua giả imitation	hắt hơi v to sneeze
crab	hâm v to warm (food)
Giáng Sinh <i>n</i> Christmas • <i>chúc mừng Giáng</i>	hè <i>n</i> summer • <i>nghỉ hè</i> to take a summer
Sinh! Merry Christmas!	vacation
giao v to deliver	heo <i>n</i> pig; pork • <i>heo quay</i> roasted pork
giáo sw n professor	hết <i>v</i> to end, to run out of • <i>xe tôi hết xăng</i>
giáo viên <i>n</i> teacher	rồi my car ran out of gas
giàu adj rich, wealthy	hiểu ν to understand • tôi không hiểu ông
giày <i>n</i> shoe • <i>giày cao gót</i> high-heel shoes	nói gì I don't understand what you are
giặt ν to wash (clothes) • giặt ủi dry cleaning	talking about
giấu ν to hide	hiệu n make, brand • ông sẽ chọn hiệu xe
giây <i>n</i> second • <i>xin chò một giây</i> just a sec-	nào? what car brand will you choose?
ond	hình <i>n</i> picture, photo • <i>chụp hình</i> to take
giấy <i>n</i> paper • <i>tờ giấy</i> sheet of paper	pictures
giấy tờ n documents, paperwork	ho ν to cough
giấy nhập cảnh <i>n</i> visa	họ ¹ <i>pron</i> they
gió <i>n</i> wind • <i>trời gió quá</i> it's very windy	$\mathbf{ho}^2 n$ last name
giờ <i>n</i> hour; o'clock • <i>mấy giờ rồi?</i> what time	hỏi v to ask • dấu hỏi hook above (accent
is it?	mark for the low-rising tone)
giùm ν to help • <i>làm giùm tôi chuyện này</i>	học ν to learn, to study • <i>học thuộc lòng</i> to
help me do this	learn by heart
giúp ν to help • xin giúp tôi please help me	học sinh <i>n</i> student, pupil

họng *n* throat • *bị đau họng* to have a sore throat

hôi chơ *n* fair

hôm qua adv yesterday

hôm trước *adv* the other day

hôn ν to kiss • *nu hôn* a kiss

hồng adj pink • hoa hồng rose

hút ν to suck

hút bụi v to vacuum • máy hút bụi vacuum cleaner

hút thuốc ν to smoke

hướng *n* direction

hưởng *v* to enjoy • *hưởng lợi* to benefit

im lặng adj silent, quiet • xin giữ im lặng please keep quiet

ích lợi adj useful, beneficial • cái máy này chẳng có ích lợi gì cả this machine is completely useless

in v to print • máy in printer

inh ỏi adj loud, noisy • bấm còi inh ỏi to honk loudly

it *adj* little, few • *it hôm nữa* within a few days • *it lâu sau* sometime later • *it nhất* at least

K

kem *n* cream, ice-cream • *bánh kem* cream cake

kém 1 *adj* & *adv* bad, badly 2 *adv* less • *kém* **ngon** less delicious

kế tiếp adj next • người kế tiếp the next person

kể ν to tell • **kể chuyện** to tell a story

kệ *n* shelf • *kệ sách* bookshelf

khác adj 1 other • những người khác the others 2 different

khách *n* 1 guest • *nhà khách* guesthouse • *phòng khách* living room 2 client, customer

khách sạn n hotel • khách sạn 5 sao fivestar hotel

khám *v* to examine • *khám bệnh* to have a medical exam

khát adj thirsty • tôi khát nước quá! I'm so thirsty!

khăn n towel • khăn bàn tablecloth • khăn *giấy* paper towel, napkin • *khăn mặt* face towel • khăn tav handkerchief • khăn tắm bath towel

khăn quàng n scarf

khắp nơi *adv* everywhere

khen ν to praise, to compliment

khi conj when • khi nào? when? • khi ấy at that time

khó adj hard, difficult

khoai tây *n* potato • *khoai tây chiên* French fries

khói *n* smoke • *ống khói* chimney

khóc *v* to cry, to sob • *khóc nức nở* to cry uncontrollably

khoė *adj* well, healthy

khô adj dry • thịt bò khô beef jerky

khôn *adj* smart, witty

không *adv* no, not • *không có chi* you are welcome

kia *adj* that... over there • *kia kìa!* there!

kiên nhẫn *adj* patient

kính n eyeglasses • kính mát sunglasses

ký tên ν to sign one's name

kỹ *adj* careful, cautious

kỹ sư *n* engineer • **kỹ sư điện** electrical engineer • kỹ sư điện toán computer engineer

L

la ν to shout, to yell

là 1 v to be • ông là ai? who are you? 2 conj that • cô ấy nói là sẽ đến trễ she said that she would come late

lá n leaf • thuốc lá cigarette

la adj strange, unfamiliar • người la stranger **lại** 1 ν to come over • *lại đây!* come over here!

2 adv again • anh nói lại đi! say that again! **lái xe** ν to drive a car lac quan adj optimistic $l\grave{a}m \ v \ 1$ to do 2 to make • $l\grave{a}m \ orn$ please **làm đám cưới** ν to have a wedding làm việc v to work • làm việc thêm giờ to work overtime lạnh adj cold • áo lạnh sweater • nước đá lanh iced water lau chùi v to clean; to dust **lắm** *adv* very • *hay lắm!* very good! **lần** *n* time • *mấy lần?* how many times? • nhiều lần multiple times **lấy chồng** v to get married (for a woman) **lấy vọ** v to get married (for a man) **len** *n* wool • *áo len* sweater lê n pear **lề đường** *n* sidewalk **lễ** *n* holiday • *nghỉ lễ* to have a holiday break **lễ Phật Đản** *n* Buddha's Birthday holiday lên v to go up • lên lầu to go upstairs **lính** *n* soldier • *di lính* to join the army **lo** ν to worry • đừng lo don't worry **lớn** adj big • người lớn adult luật sư n attorney, lawyer • luật sư bào chữa defense attorney **luôn luôn** *adv* always **lung** *n* back • *bi đau lung* to have a backache **luong** *n* salary • *lãnh lương* to get paid **luõi** *n* tongue ly *n* glass, cup

M

forever

mà 1 adv but • chậm mà chắc slowly but surely 2 pron who, whom, which • người mà *anh cần gặp* the person whom you need to see mai adv tomorrow • sáng mai tomorrow morning **mãi** *adv* forever • *nhớ mãi* to remember

mang *v* 1 to bring, to carry 2 to wear (accessories) • mang giày to wear shoes • mang kính to wear glasses **mang thai** ν to be pregnant **mát** *adj* cool • *trời mát* the weather is cool $m\grave{a}u \ n \ color \cdot m\grave{a}u \ g\grave{i}$? what color? **may**¹ ν to sew • *tiệm may* tailor shop may² adj lucky, fortunate • may quá! how lucky! **máy** *n* machine • *máy móc* machinery máy bay n airplane • máy bay phản lực jet plane **máy giặt** *n* washer, washing machine **máy lanh** *n* air conditioner **máy may** *n* sewing machine **máy sấy** *n* dryer • *máy sấy tóc* hair dryer máy rút tiền n ATM mắc/đắt adj expensive, costly **mặc** v to wear (clothing) • **mặc áo** to wear a **mặc vào** *v* to put on (*clothing*) **mặn** *adj* salty **mắt** *n* eye • **mí mắt** eyelid **mặt trăng** *n* moon • *trăng tròn* full moon mặt trời n sun • năng lượng mặt trời solar energy **mất** v 1 to lose 2 to pass away 3 to take • diđến đó bằng xe hơi mất bao lâu? how long does it take to drive there? **mây** *n* cloud • *tròi có nhiều mây* it's cloudy **mấy** *adj* how many • *mấy giờ rồi?* what time is it? • *cháu mấy tuổi?* how old are you, kid? **me/má** *n* mother • **me nuôi** adoptive mother **me chong** *n* mother-in-law (of the woman) **me kế** *n* step-mother **me vo** *n* mother-in-law (of the man) mèo n cat • mèo mun black cat **mến** ν to like • **dễ mến** likeable **mệt** *adj* tired • *mệt nhoài* exhausted **mì** *n* egg noodles • *mì hoành thánh* wonton noodles

nắng 1 *n* sunlight 2 *adj* sunny **miệng** *n* mouth • *ngon miệng* to have a good nặng adj 1 heavy 2 grave, serious • dấu nặng appetite **món** n 1 item 2 dish underdot (for the low-falling tone) nâu n & adj brown **móng** *n* nail • *móng chân* toe nail • *móng* tay fingernail **nấu ăn** ν to cook **môi** *n* lip • **son môi** lipstick **ngã** v to fall • **dấu ngã** tilde (for the high-rising **mỗi** *adj* every, each • *mỗi ngày* each day **mo** *n* wife of one's uncle (*mother's brother*) **ngã tư** *n* intersection **mới** 1 *n* new 2 *adv* just, recently **ngày** *n* day • **ngày lễ** *n* holiday mời v to invite • thiệp mời invitation card ngày tháng n date • hôm nay là ngày tháng **mua** ν to buy • đi mua sắm to go shopping *mấy?* what's the date today? **mùa** *n* season • *trái mùa* off-season **ngắn** adj short (lengthwise) mùa đông n winter ngân hàng n bank mùa hè/mùa hạ n summer **nghe** ν to hear, to listen mùa thu n autumn • bánh trung thu mid**nghẹt mũi** ν to have a stuffy nose nghề n profession • anh làm nghề gì? what autumn cake, mooncake do you do for a living? mùa xuân n spring **mũi** *n* nose • *bị sổ mũi* to have a runny nose **nghỉ** ν 1 to rest, to break 2 to have a day off **nghỉ ngơi** ν to rest, to relax **muối** *n* salt • *muối tiêu* salt and pepper **muốn** ν to want **nghĩ** ν to think • *anh nghĩ sao?* what do you **muỗng** *n* spoon • *muỗng canh* tablespoon • think? *muỗng cà-phê* teaspoon **ngoài** adv & prep outside **mua** n & v (to) rain • **tròi đang mua lón** it **ngoại tệ** *n* foreign currency is raining hard ngoạn cảnh v to sightsee mừng adj glad, happy **ngon** *adj* delicious muroi n ten (used with the tens) • năm muroi **ngot** *adj* sweet fifty **ngón tay** *n* finger • *ngón áp út* ring finger • mười n ten • mười lăm fifteen ngón cái thumb • ngón giữa middle finger • mướn v 1 to hire 2 to rent • nhà cho mướn *ngón trỏ* index finger • *ngón út* little finger house for rent **ngôn ngữ** *n* language **muon** ν to borrow • **cho muon** to lend **ngực** *n* chest **Mỹ** *n* & *adj* America(n) • *người Mỹ* American **nhà** *n* house, home • *nhà biệt lập* detached person • nước Mỹ America house • *nhà chung cu* condominium • *nhà lầu* multi-story house, building • *nhà* N *trệt* single story house • *người nhà* family **nam** n & adj south member nay/này adj this • chiều nay this afternoon • **nhà hàng** *n* restaurant tháng này this month **nhà thờ** *n* church **năm** *n* 1 five 2 year • *năm nay* this year **nhanh** *adj* quick, fast • *nhanh lên!* hurry up! nắm ν to hold • tay nắm cửa doorknob **nhất** adj 1 first • **giải nhất** first prize 2 adv

nằm v 1 to lie 2 to be located

most, best • tôi thích bức tranh này nhất I

like this painting the most nhe adj light, slight nhiều adj & adv much, many, a lot • nhiều khi oftentimes **nhỏ** *adj* small • *trẻ nhỏ* young kids nhức adj painful, sore **nhức đầu** ν to have a headache nhưng conj but **nĩa** *n* fork nó pron it **nói** ν to say, to speak • xin nói lớn lên! please speak up! **nón** *n* hat • *đôi nón* to wear a hat **nón lá** *n* conical hat **nóng** adj hot • **nóng tính** hot-tempered **nôn** ν to throw up **noi** *n* place • **noi** nào? where? **nước** n 1 water 2 country **nước chấm** *n* dipping sauce nước đá n ice nước lanh n water **nước mắm** *n* fish sauce **nước ngot** *n* soda, soft drink

\mathbf{O}

oi adj hot, muggy • trời oi bức quá! it's so hot and muggy! **ói** ν to vomit **om** ν to simmer **om sòm** *adj* noisy • *la lối om sòm* to yell noisily **ong** *n* bee • *mật ong* bee honey • *tổ ong* beehive **ong ởng** adj & adv loud(ly) • **nói ong ởng** to talk loudly **óng ánh** *adj* sparkling

Ô

ổi n guava

ô/dù n umbrella • che ô/che dù to carry an umbrella ồ interj oh • ồ, phải rồi oh, that's right

ôm ν to hug, to embrace ốm adj 1 skinny 2 sick • cô bị ốm à? are you sick? **ôn** ν to review ồn ào adj noisy, loud **ổn** *adj* alright • *có gì không ổn* there's something wrong **ông** *n* 1 sir, mister 2 *pron* you (*male*) **ông ngoại** *n* maternal grandfather **ông nội** *n* paternal grandfather **ống** *n* tube, pipe • **ống hút** drinking straw • ống kính lens • ống nhòm binoculars • ống *nghe* stethoscope • *ống nước* water pipe

റ

ò adv (informal) yes • **ò** há! oh yeah! \vec{o} v 1 to be at • \vec{o} $d\hat{a}u$ where at? 2 to live ở nhà v to stay home • ν to belch • bị ợ chua to have heartburn **oi** part (used to call out someone) • **me oi!** Mom! **on** *n* favor • *làm on* to do a favor ớn adj sick • tôi ớn công việc này lắm rồi I'm so sick of this job **ót** *n* pepper, chili

pha v 1 to mix 2 to brew • **pha** cà-**phê** to

phải adj 1 right (vs. left) • bên phải on the

make coffee • *pha trà* to brew tea

P

right 2 right (vs. wrong) • phải rồi! that's right! **Pháp** *n* & *adj* France, French • *tiếng Pháp* French language **phần** *n* portion, part • *phần lớn* for the most part **phép** *n* permission • *giấy phép* permit **phi trường** *n* airport **phiền** *v* to bother, to mind • *phiền ông cho* tôi biết mấy giờ rồi would you mind telling me what time it is?

phim *n* film, movie • *phim hài hước* comequý adj precious, valuable **quỳ** ν to kneel dy movie • *phim hành động* action movie, thriller • *phim kinh di* horror movie • *phim* **quýt** *n* mandarin, tangerine tình cảm drama movie • phim trinh thám R crime movie phòng n room • nhà ba phòng ngủ hai ra ν to go out, to come out • ra trường to **phòng tắm** three-bedroom, two-bath house graduate from school **phòng ăn** *n* dining room **rác** *n* trash, garbage • *thùng rác* trash can phòng cấp cứu n emergency room rách adj torn, ripped phòng học n study, classroom **rap chiếu phim** *n* movie theater phòng khách n living room **rap hát** *n* theater **phòng ngủ** *n* bedroom rau n vegetable • rau cải greens **phòng tắm** *n* bathroom **răng** *n* tooth • **răng cửa** front tooth • **răng phố** n 1 street 2 town • đi phố to go downhàm molar • bi nhức rặng to have a toothache • đánh răng/chải răng to brush one's **phổi** *n* lung • *bệnh lao phổi* tuberculosis teeth **phở** *n* rice noodles • **phở bò** beef noodles • rằng conj that • tôi nghĩ rằng anh ấy có lý I phở gà chicken noodles think that he is right phút n minute **râu** *n* facial hair • *râu cằm* beard • *râu mép* moustache Q **rất** adv very qua v to pass, to go over re adj affordable, cheap **quá** adj so • đẹp quá! so beautiful! **rõ** adj clear **quà** *n* gift, present • *quà sinh nhật* birthday **rót** v to pour **rő** *n* basket • **bóng rő** basketball **quả** *n* fruit • *quả xoài* mango • *quả táo* apple **rồi** *adj* already • *chúng tôi ăn cơm rồi* we **quai** *n* 1 handle 2 strap have already eaten quanh prep & adv around • quanh đây **rồng** *n* dragon • *cây xương rồng* cactus around here **rồng** *adj* empty **quăn** *adj* curly • *tóc quăn* curly hair **rộng** *adj* 1 loose 2 wide **roi** ν to fall • *lá vàng roi* the dead leaves are quần áo n clothing quần tây n pants, trousers falling **rời** ν to leave **queo** v to make a turn • **queo phái** to turn right • queo trái to turn left **rung** *v* 1 to shake • *rung chuông* to ring the **quét nhà** ν to sweep the floors bell 2 to vibrate • *diện thoại rung* the phone **quên** v to forget • *hay quên* forgetful is vibrating **ruột** 1 *n* intestines 2 *adj* blood, biological • **quốc ca** *n* national anthem quốc gia n nation *anh ruột* blood brother **quốc kỳ** *n* national flag **rút** *v* to withdraw • *rút tiền* to withdraw money **quốc tịch** *n* 1 nationality 2 citizenship • *vào* **rửa chén** *ν* to wash dishes

quốc tịch to become naturalized

rừng *n* forest, woods

S **sữa** *n* milk • **sữa đặc** condensed milk **sách** *n* book • *tiêm sách* bookstore **sức mạnh** *n* strength sach adj clean **sức khoẻ** *n* health • *khám sức khoẻ* to have a sai adj wrong, incorrect physical exam sáng adj bright • buổi sáng morning **sung** *adj* swollen sao n star • sao chổi comet T **sao**² *pron* what • *cô nghĩ sao?* what do you think? • không sao đâu no problem • ông tách n cup có sao không? are you OK? $tai n ear \cdot nang tai hard of hearing \cdot tôi bị ù$ sau adv & prep 1 behind 2 after • sau đó tai my ears are ringing afterward tại sao adv why • tại sao cô học tiếng Việt? sáu n & adi six why are you learning Vietnamese? **sắp** part (indicates a planned action (soon)) • **tám** *n* & *adj* eight họ sắp đến thăm chúng ta they are going to **táo** *n* apple • *bánh nhân táo* apple pie tay n hand • làm bằng tay hand-made pay us a visit tắm v to bathe, to shower • tắm nắng to sun**sân** *n* yard, patio • *sân sau* backyard, patio • sân trước front yard • sân vận động stadibathe • *tắm biển* to swim in the ocean tâp thể duc v to exercise um tây n & adj west • gà tây turkey • hành tây sâu adj deep • chiều sâu depth **sẽ** part (indicates a planned action (later)) • onion • *Tết tây* New Year's khi nào anh sẽ tốt nghiệp đai học? when **tên** *n* name • *cô tên gì?* what's your name? will you graduate from college? **Tết Nguyên Đán** *n* Lunar New Year holiday siêng năng adj hard-working **Tết Trung Thu** *n* Mid-Autumn festival **siêu thị** *n* supermarket **tháng** *n* month • *tháng tư* April sinh v 1 to give birth 2 to be born • $b\grave{a}$ sinh**tháng chap** *n* the twelfth month in the Lunar năm nào? what year were you born in? calendar sinh nhật n birthday • chúc mừng sinh **tháng giêng** *n* the first month in the Lunar *nhật!* happy birthday! calendar **sinh viên** *n* college student thành phố n city số n number • số chẵn even number • số lẻ thay quần áo v to get dressed odd number thăm v to visit • ngày mai chúng tôi sẽ đi **sổ** *n* record • **sổ tay** notebook **thăm viện bảo tàng thành phố** we will visit the municipal museum tomorrow **sổ mũi** ν to have a runny nose **sông** *n* river • *bò sông* river bank **thấp** adj short (person), low **sống** *v* to live • *sống sót* to survive **thật** *adj* real, true • *sự thật* truth thấy v to see • cô thấy chưa? you see? **sốt** *n* fever • *bị sốt* to have a fever $\mathbf{s}\hat{\mathbf{o}}$ v to touch, to feel **thầy** *n* male teacher **so** ν to fear, to be afraid thì v to be • em tôi cao mà tôi thì thấp my sớm adj 1 early 2 soon • không sớm thì little brother is tall while I am short thích v to like • bà thích ăn món gì nhất? *muộn* sooner or later son *v* to paint • son nhà to paint a house what's your favorite food?

thím *n* wife of one's uncle (*father's younger* brother) **thịt** *n* meat • **thịt bò** beef • **thịt gà** chicken • thit heo pork thông hành n passport **thông minh** *adj* intelligent thời gian n time • trong một thời gian dài for a long time thời tiết n weather • thời tiết hôm nay như *thế nào?* what's the weather like today? **thuốc** *n* medication • **uống thuốc** to take medication thuyền n boat • thuyền đánh cá fishing boat **thư viện** *n* library • *du thuyền* pleasure boat, cruise ship **thứ ba** 1 *adj* third 2 *n* Tuesday **thứ bảy** 1 *adj* seventh 2 *n* Saturday **thứ hai** 1 *adj* second 2 *n* Monday **thứ hang** *n* rank, order **thứ năm** 1 *adj* fifth 2 *n* Thursday thứ nhất adj first • đứng nhất to rank first thứ nhì adj second **thứ sáu** 1 *adj* sixth 2 *n* Friday **thứ tư** 1 *adj* fourth 2 *n* Wednesday thứ tự n order • theo thứ tự A, B, C in alphabetical order thức ăn n food thức giấc v to wake up **thức uống** *n* beverage, drink thực đơn n menu thực phẩm n food **thương xá** *n* shopping mall tiệm ăn n eatery, restaurant **tiền** *n* money • **bao nhiều tiền?** how much money? **tiền giấy** *n* paper money, bill **tiền lẻ** *n* change, coin **tim** *n* heart • *bi dau tim* to have a heart attack tím adj purple • mặt anh ấy tím ngắt his face turned blue **tô** *n* bowl

tôi pron I, me • của tôi my, mine tối adj dark • buổi tối evening **tôm** *n* shrimp • *tôm hùm* lobster **tốt** *adj* good, high quality trả v to pay • trả hết nợ to pay off one's debt **trả lời** ν to answer, to reply **trả phòng** *v* to check out (*in a hotel*) trai adj male, boy trái¹ n fruit • trái mít jackfruit • trái thanh long dragonfruit trái² adj left • bên trái on the left **trang điểm** v to put on make up **trang trí** *v* to decorate **trăng** *n* moon • *trăng tròn* full moon trắng adj white • da trắng fair skin **trễ** *adj* & *adv* late **trên** *prep* & *adv* above; over **tròn** *adj* round • *hình tròn* circle **trong** *prep* & *adv* inside **trống** *adj* empty, vacant • *bụng trống* empty stomach **trước** prep & adv 1 in front (of) 2 before **tů** n cabinet **tů lạnh** *n* refrigerator **tủ quần áo** *n* closet tuần (lễ) n week • cuối tuần weekend **tuổi** *n* age • *anh bao nhiều tuổi?* how old are you? **tươi** *adj* fresh **tưới** *v* to water • *tưới cây* to water the plants tưởng tượng v to imagine tượng n statue TJ

ủi ν to iron • **bàn ủi** iron **ủng** *n* boot • **ủng đi mưa** rain boots **uốn** ν to twist **uống** *v* to drink • *thức uống* beverage, drink **uống thuốc** *v* to take medication **uổng** *adj* wasteful • *uổng quá!* what a waste!

ví *n* wallet **úp** *adv* upside down • *nằm úp mặt* to lie face **ví dụ** *n* example • *lấy ví dụ* for example down vì conj & prep because (of) • vì sao? why? **út** *adj* 1 youngest • *con út* the youngest child 2 smallest • ngón út little finger **viên** *n* institute viện bảo tàng n museum IJ **viết bi** *n* ball point pen w part (used in a tag question) • món này **viết chì** *n* pencil • *viết chì màu* crayon không ngon w? isn't this dish delicious? viết ν to write **ù** adv (informal) yes **vội** *v* to hurry • *vội vàng* hurriedly ước v to wish • ước gì tôi có nhiều tiền if **vó** *n* sock • *đôi vó* a pair of socks only I had a lot of money **vở** *n* notebook **wom** *v* to nurse • **wom cây** to nurse plants **vo** *n* wife **won** adi rotten • cá won rotten fish với 1 prep with 2 conj and • anh với tôi you **won** v to puff out • **won** ngwc to puff out and I one's chest **vui** *adj* happy • *niềm vui* happiness vui tính adj funny, humorous **ướp** ν to marinate, to spice **wót** adj wet vùng n zone, region **vuông** *n* & *adj* square \mathbf{V} **vùa** 1 part (indicates a recently completed **vá** ν to mend action) • họ vừa hỏi anh đấy they've just và conj and asked for you 2 *adj* medium • *cõ vừa* medium **vai** *n* shoulder • *vai kề vai* shoulder to shoulder size • **vuron vai** to stretch oneself **vườn** *n* garden • *làm vườn* to do gardening **vài** *adj* some, a few • *vài tháng* a couple of **vườn trẻ** *n* preschool months X **vải** *n* fabric **vàng** *adj* & *n* 1 yellow 2 gold **xa** prep & adv far (from) • bao xa? how far? vào v to come in, to enter • xin mòi vào **xách** v to carry (something with a handle) please come in **xám** *adj* gray xanh dương adj blue **váy** *n* skirt vång adj deserted **xanh luc** adj green \mathbf{x} ào \mathbf{v} to stir-fry • \mathbf{m} ì \mathbf{x} ào \mathbf{d} òn crispy fried vång mặt adj absent **vần** *n* 1 syllable 2 rhyme noodles **vẫn** adv still **xăng** *n* gas • *đổ xăng* to fill up the car tank • **vâng** adv (respectful) yes tram xăng gas station **vất** ν to throw away **xấu** *adj* 1 bad 2 ugly **xe** *n* vehicle • *bến xe* Park-And-Ride, transpor**vật** *n* object, thing **vé** *n* ticket • *vé khứ hồi* round ticket tation center

xe buýt *n* bus • *trạm xe buýt* bus stop

xe đạp *n* bicycle **xe đò** *n* charter bus

 $\mathbf{v}\hat{\mathbf{e}}^{1} \mathbf{v}$ to come back, to return

ve prep about, regarding

 $v\tilde{e} v$ to draw, to sketch

xe hơi n car • xe hơi điện electric car **xe lửa** *n* train • *vé xe lửa* train ticket xé v to tear

xem v 1 to look at 2 to watch • **xem phim** to watch a movie

xếp v to fold • nghệ thuật xếp giấy origami **xếp hàng** v to stand in line

xin *v* to ask for • **xin phép** to ask for permission

xin lõi interj pardon, excuse me

xinh *adj* pretty

xoài n mango • xoài sống green mango

xôi *n* steam sticky rice

xui adj unlucky, unfortunate

xúp *n* soup • *xúp măng cua* crab and asparagus soup

xương *n* bone • *bộ xương* skeleton • *xương sống* spine

Y

y khoa n medicine • đại học y khoa medical school

y sĩ n physician

y tá *n* nurse

ý n idea • tôi chọt nảy ra một ý something just came to my mind

ý kiến n opinion • chị có ý kiến gì không? do you have any opinion?

ý nghĩ n thought • tôi có nghĩ đến điều đó that thought has crossed my mind

ý nghĩa n meaning, significance • chữ này *nghĩa là gì?* what does this word mean? yêu v to love • tình yêu love

yếu *adj* weak • *yếu bóng vía* faint-hearted **yếu ớt** *adj* faint, frail

ENGLISH-VIETNAMESE VOCABULARY

A among prep giữa, trong số a art một • a person một người amount n số tiền ability n khả năng and conj và, với • mother and daughter hai mẹ able adj có thể about adj 1 về • what about? về chuyện gì? 2 **animal** *n* thú vật, con vật khoảng • about two days khoảng hai ngày **another** *adj* khác • *another time* lúc khác above adj & adv trên answer v trả lời accept v chấp nhận, chấp thuận any adj 1 bất cứ • any time bất cứ lúc nào 2 nào account n truong muc • savings account truong • do you have any questions? cô có câu hỏi nào không? muc tiết kiêm across prep qua, băng qua anyone pron ai, bất cứ ai, bất cứ người nào $\bullet I$ didn't see anyone tôi không thấy ai cả act n hành động activity n hoạt động, sinh hoạt anything pron gì, bất cứ cái gì, bất cứ điều gì actually adv thật ra, đúng ra • did you buy anything? anh có mua cái gì add v công, thêm vào không? address n địa chỉ apply v áp dụng, ứng dụng adult n người lớn area n vùng, khu affect v ảnh hưởng đến **arm** *n* cánh tay after prep & conj sau, sau khi **around** *prep* & *adv* chung quanh, vòng vòng • *to* again adv lại, nữa • do it again làm lại đi run around chay vòng vòng against prep chống lại arrive v đến • what time will the flight arrive? **age** *n* tuổi • *how old are you?* anh bao nhiêu tuổi? mấy giờ máy bay đến? agency n văn phòng, chi nhánh art n nghệ thuật, mỹ thuật agent n nhân viên, người đại diện artist n nghệ sĩ, hoạ sĩ ago adv cách đây, về trước • two years ago cách as conj như • as soon as possible càng sớm càng đây hai năm tốt agree v đồng ý ask v hỏi • to ask a question đặt câu hỏi **ahead** adv phía trước • **go ahead** xin tự nhiên at prep 1 tại, ở • at home ở nhà 2 vào, vào lúc • at air n không gian, không khí two o'clock vào lúc hai giờ all adj tất cả, mọi attention n sự chú ý, sự để ý • attention! xin chú allow v cho phép ý! almost adv hau như audience n khán giả, cử toạ alone adv một mình available adj có, có sẵn, rảnh • when are you available to do this? khi nào ông rảnh để làm along prep doc theo already adv rồi, xong chuyện này? also adv cũng avoid v tránh although conj mặc dầu away adv 1 cách • twenty meters away cách hai always adv luôn luôn, lúc nào cũng... mươi mét 2 khỏi • get away from here ra khỏi **American** *adj* & *n* (người) Mỹ, thuộc về Mỹ chỗ này

B

baby n em bé

back n lung • in the back of phía sau

bad adj xấu, dở, tồi

bag n bao, túi

ball *n* banh, bóng

bank n ngân hàng, nhà băng • bank account

trương mục ngân hàng

bar n quán rươu

be v là, thì, bị, được • **be patient** hãy kiên nhẫn

beat v đánh, gõ

beautiful adj xinh, đẹp

because conj vì, bởi vì

become ν trở nên, trở thành

bed *n* giường • *bedroom* phòng ngủ

before *prep* & *adv* trước, trước khi

begin v bắt đầu

behind prep & adv sau

believe ν tin, tin tưởng

best adj & adv nhất, tốt nhất

better adj & adv tốt hơn, hay hơn

between prep giữa

big adj to, lớn

bill n 1 hoá đơn 2 giấy bac

billion adj & n tỷ • **billionaire** tỷ phú

bit n chút, tí • just a little bit chỉ một chút thôi

black adj & n (màu) đen

blood 1 *n* máu 2 *adj* ruột • *blood sister* chị ruột

blue *adj* & *n* (màu) xanh dương

board n bảng

body *n* thân thể, cơ thể

book *n* sách • *bookstore* tiệm sách

born *adj* sinh • *when were you born?* anh sinh

năm nào?

both *adj* & *pron* cả hai

box *n* hộp

boy *n* con trai • *boyfriend* ban trai

break n sự nghỉ ngơi, sự gián đoạn • let's take a

break chúng ta nghỉ một chút

bring v mang đến, đem theo

brother *n* anh • *older brother* anh • *younger*

brother em trai

build ν xây, cất, xây dưng

building n toà nhà

business *n* 1 việc buôn bán, cơ sở thương mai 2

công việc

but 1 conj nhưng, mà 2 prep ngoại trừ

buy ν mua, sắm

by prep 1 bằng, do, bởi • by bus bằng xe buýt •

by whom? do ai? 2 trước • by ten c'clock trước

mười giờ

C

call v kêu, goi

camera n máy chụp hình, máy quay phim

can¹ n thùng, lon • a can of beer lon bia

can² v có thể • can I help you? ông cần gì?

capital n thủ đô

car n xe. xe hoi

card n 1 thẻ • credit card thẻ tín dung 2 thiệp •

greeting card thiệp mừng 3 bài • to play cards

chơi bài

care v săn sóc, chăm sóc • take care giữ gìn sức

khoẻ nhé

career n nghề nghiệp, sự nghiệp

carry v mang, xách, khiêng, bồng

case n trường hợp • just in case phòng khi

catch v bắt, chụp

cause v gây ra, khiến

cell phone *n* điện thoại cầm tay

center n trung tâm

certain *adj* chắc chắn

chair n ghế

chance *n* cơ hội, dịp • *by chance* tình cờ

change v thay đổi

charge v tính tiền

check¹ v kiểm soát, kiểm tra

check² *n* ngân phiếu • *to cash a check* đổi ngân

phiếu ra tiền

child n 1 trẻ con 2 con cái

choice n sự chọn lựa

choose v chon, lya

church n nhà thờ, thánh đường citizen n công dân • citizenship quốc tịch city n thành phố class n lớp học clear adj 1 trong suốt 2 rõ ràng close v đóng, khép • the store is closed tiệm đóng cửa cold 1 adj lạnh 2 bệnh cảm I have a cold tôi bị cảm college n trường cao đẳng color n màu, màu sắc • what's your favorite color? cô thích màu gì nhất? come v đến, lai • come here! lai đây! commercial adj thương mại **common** *adj* 1 chung 2 thông thường community n cộng đồng company n công ty compare v so sánh computer n máy điện toán concern v quan tâm, lo lắng • I'm very concerned tôi rất lo lắng **condition** *n* điều kiên, tình trang continue ν tiếp tuc control v điều khiển, kiểm soát cost v giá • how much does this house cost? căn nhà này giá bao nhiêu? could v có thể • could you help me with this? anh giúp tôi việc này nhé! country n nước, quốc gia **couple** *n* đôi, cặp, vài • *a couple of days* vài ngày course n khoá học, lớp học cover ν che, phủ culture n văn hoá cup n 1 tách 2 cúp, giải • the World Cup Giải Túc Cầu Thế Giới current adj hiện thời, hiện hành customer n khách hàng cut v cắt, chặt

D

dark adj tối, tối tăm • darkness bóng tối daughter n con gái • daughter-in-law con dâu day n ngày • all day long suốt ngày • every day hằng ngày dead adj chết death n sư chết decide v quyết đinh deep adj sâu, sâu sắc degree n 1 đô, mức 2 bằng cấp describe v miêu tả, mô tả design n kiểu mẫu despite prep mặc, bất chấp detail n chi tiết determine v quyết tâm develop ν phát triển die v chết different adj khác, khác nhau difficult adj khó, khó khăn dinner n bữa ăn tối direction n hướng, phương hướng director n giám đốc discover v khám phá, phát giác discuss v thảo luân, bàn bac disease ν bênh do v làm • don't do it đừng làm chuyên đó **doctor** *n* 1 bác sĩ 2 tiến sĩ dog n chó door n cửa • the house next door nhà bên cạnh down adv xuống draw v vẽ • drawing hình vẽ dream v nằm mơ, mơ ước drive ν lái • driver tài xế, người lái xe drop ν đánh rơi, làm rớt **drug** *n* thuốc • *drugstore* tiệm thuốc tây **during** *prep* trong, suốt • *during winter* suốt

F

mùa đông

each adj & pron mỗi • each and everyone tất cả mọi người early adj & adv sóm east n & adj (hướng) đông, (miền) đông • the East Sea Biển Đông

easy adj dễ, dễ dàng • take it easy hãy bình tĩnh fall 1 v roi, ngã, té 2 n mùa thu eat v ăn • what would you like to eat? cô muốn ăn **family** *n* gia đình, nhà món gì? far adj & adv xa • how far is it from here? từ đây economy n nền kinh tế đến đó là bao xa? fast adj & adv nhanh, mau education n giáo duc eight n & adj (số) tám **father** *n* cha, ba, bố • *father and son* hai cha con either 1 adj mỗi, nào • either side mỗi bên 2 conj feel v cảm thấy • how are you feeling? ông cảm hoặc • either this or that hoặc cái này hoặc cái thấy thế nào? kia 3 *adv* cũng • *I don't like it, either* tôi cũng few adj ít • he has very few friends anh ay có rất không thích cái đó ít bạn • within a few days trong vòng mấy ngày fill v làm cho đầy, điền • fill in the blanks điền else adj khác, nữa • what else? còn gì nữa không? • anywhere else bất cứ nơi nào khác vào chỗ trống employee n nhân viên, người làm **film** *n* phim end n phần cuối, đoan kết **final** *adj* cuối, chót finally adv cuối cùng enjoy v hưởng, thưởng thức enough adj & adv đủ • that's enough thôi đủ rồi **find** ν tìm thấy, tìm ra enter v vào, đi vào **fine** *adj* tốt, hay • *I'm fine, thank you* tôi khoẻ, **entire** *adj* cả, toàn thể • *the entire world* cả thế cám ơn giới **finger** *n* ngón tay environment n môi trường **finish** ν kết thúc, làm xong especially adv đặc biệt, nhất là **fire** *n* lửa, hoả hoan even adv ngay cả, ngay đến, thậm chí first adj đầu tiên, thứ nhất • the first time lần evening *n* buổi tối đầu tiên event n sinh hoat, sư kiến fish n cá • fish sauce nước mắm ever adv bao giò • have you ever been to Viet**five** *adj* & *n* (số) năm nam? cô có bao giờ đi Việt Nam chưa? floor n 1 nền nhà, sàn nhà 2 tầng • first floor every adj mõi, mọi tầng trệt everyone pron mỗi người, mọi người fly v bay everything pron mỗi thứ, mọi thứ, mọi việc follow v theo sau, theo dõi exactly adv đúng, một cách chính xác **food** *n* thức ăn, thực phẩm **example** *n* ví dụ • *for example* ví dụ như foot n bàn chân • to go on foot đi bộ exist v hiện hữu, tồn tại, sinh tồn for prep cho, dành cho, để • what is this for? cái expect v mong, đợi này để làm gì? **experience** *n* kinh nghiệm force n sức mạnh expert n chuyên viên, chuyên gia foreign adj ngoại quốc, nước ngoài • foreign explain v giải thích, cắt nghĩa *language* ngoại ngữ eye n mắt • keep an eye on để mắt tới forget v quên **form** *n* 1 hình dạng, hình thức 2 mẫu đơn F **four** *adj* & *n* (số) bốn face n mặt • face to face mặt đối mặt free adj 1 tự do 2 rảnh rỗi 3 miễn phí

friend *n* ban • **best friend** ban thân

fail v 1 thất bại 2 làm thất vọng, phụ lòng

from prep tù • where are you from? anh là người nước nào? **front** *n* phía trước, đằng trước full adj 1 đầy 2 no, no nê future n tương lai

G

game n trò chơi, cuộc đấu garden n vườn gas n 1 xăng 2 ga, khí đốt general adj chung, tổng quát, khái quát • in general nói chung get v lấy, có được girl n con gái • girlfriend bạn gái give v cho, đưa • give me that đưa cái đó cho tôi glass n 1 kính • glass door của kính 2 ly • glass of water ly nước go ν đi • go ahead! cứ việc! **good** *adj* tốt, hay • *good morning, sir* chào ông great adj hay, tuyệt green adj xanh lục, xanh lá cây • greens rau cải group n nhóm grow v 1 mọc 2 trồng 3 lớn lên guess v đoán • I guess so tôi nghĩ thế

Н

hair *n* tóc, lông • *hairdresser* thợ làm tóc half adj & n nửa, rưỡi • half an hour nửa giờ, nửa tiếng • a dollar and a half một đô-la rưỡi **hand** *n* bàn tay • *handy man* người đàn ông tháo vát

happen v xảy ra, xảy đến • what happened? có chuyện gì vậy?

happy adj vui, mwng • Happy New Year! Chúc mừng năm mới!

hard adj 1 cứng 2 khó 3 adv nhiều • he worked very hard anh ấy làm việc nhiều lắm

have *v* 1 có • *we have no time to do that* chúng tôi không có thì giờ để làm việc đó 2 đã • she has met with John cô ấy đã gặp John **head** *n* đầu • *to have a headache* bị nhức đầu

health *n* sức khoẻ • *health insurance* bảo hiểm sức khoẻ, bảo hiểm y tế hear v nghe • I can't hear you tôi không nghe anh nói gì cả **heart** *n* tim • *to know by heart* thuộc lòng heavy adj nặng, nặng nề **help** ν giúp, giúp đỡ • *help! help!* cứu tôi với! her pron cô ấy, chị ấy, bà ấy here adv đây, ở đây • here you go đây này high adj cao • high wind gió lớn him pron anh ấy, ông ấy **his** *adj* của anh ấy, của ông ấy hit v đánh, đâp **hold** *v* giữ • *hold on* chờ một chút **home** *n* nhà • *at home* ở nhà **hope** ν mong, hy vong **hospital** *n* bệnh viện, nhà thương **hot** adj 1 nóng 2 cay hotel n khách san **hour** *n* giờ, tiếng • *after-hours* sau giờ làm việc house n nhà how adv thế nào, ra sao • how have you been? dao này anh ra sao? **however** *adv* tuy nhiên, tuy vậy huge adj to lớn

human adj con người • human beings loài người **hundred** *adj* & *n* trăm • *hundreds of people* hàng trăm người

husband *n* chồng • *husband and wife* hai vợ chồng

I pron tôi, em, con, cháu idea n ý, ý kiến • *I had no idea* tôi không hay biết if conj nếu, giá như • if you please xin ông vui lòng image n hình, ảnh **important** *adj* quan trọng in prep ở, tại, vào, trong • in this case trong trường hợp này

include v gồm có, bao gồm increase ν tăng lên, gia tăng individual n cá nhân industry n kỹ nghệ, công nghiệp information n tin tức, chi tiết • for more information để biết thêm chi tiết inside prep & adv trong, bên trong instead adv thay vì, thay vào đó interest n sư quan tâm, sư chú ý interesting adj hay, lôi cuốn, thú vị interview n cuôc phỏng vấn into prep vào issue n vấn đề it pron nó, điều đó • that's it đúng vậy! item n món its adj của nó

J

jacket n áo khoác jam n sư mắc ket, sư tắc nghẽn • traffic jam sư **job** *n* việc, công việc, việc làm jog ν chạy bộ join ν gia nhập, vào jump ν nhảy just adv 1 chỉ • just a bit chỉ một chút thôi 2 vừa, mới • they've just left họ vừa di khỏi

K **keep** v giữ • **keep out!** tránh ra! key n chìa khoá kid n đứa nhỏ • my kids các con của tôi kind¹ n loại, thứ • what kind of drink would you like? cô muốn uống gì? kind² adj tử tế, tốt bụng • it's very kind of you anh tử tế quá **kitchen** *n* nhà bếp **know** ν biết • **you know what?** anh biết không? • who knows ai biết được **knowledge** *n* kiến thức

ı

man)

low adj thấp

land n đất, đất đại language n ngôn ngữ, tiếng large adj to, lón last adj cuối, chót • last but not least cuối cùng nhưng không kém phần quan trọng late adj & adv muôn, trễ later adj sau này, về sau • sooner or later sớm muôn gì laugh v cười law n luât, luât lê lawyer n luât sư learn ν hoc, hoc hỏi least adj ít nhất leave v 1 ra đi, rời khỏi 2 để lai, bỏ lai left adj trái, bên trái • left-handed thuận tay trái **leg** *n* chân, đùi less adv kém, ít hon • more or less xấp xỉ let v để, để cho • let's go! chúng ta đi thôi! letter n 1 chữ, chữ cái 2 thư level n mức đô, trình đô lie v 1 nằm 2 nói dối **life** *n* cuôc sống, cuộc đời light¹ n ánh sáng, đèn light² adj 1 sáng 2 nhe like1 v thích, mến like² prep như, giống như **line** *n* đường • **to stand in line** sắp hàng list n danh sách **listen** ν nghe, lắng nghe little adj ít, nhỏ **live** *v* sống • *where do you live?* anh sống ở đâu? **long** *adj* dài, lâu • *how long will it take?* việc này mất bao lâu? look v nhìn • to look for tìm, kiếm lose v mất, làm mất lot n nhiều • a lot of money nhiều tiền **love** *n* tình yêu, tình thương • *I love you* anh yêu em (man to woman), em yêu anh (woman to

M machine n máy magazine n tạp chí • monthly magazine nguyệt san main n chính make v làm man n đàn ông manager n giám đốc, quản lý many adj nhiều • how many children do you have? ông bà có bao nhiệu người con? market n chợ • supermarket siêu thị **material** *n* vât liêu matter n vấn đề • what's the matter? có chuyện gì vây? may ν có thể, được phép • may I come in? cho tôi vào nhé maybe adv có lẽ, có thể me pron tôi, em, con, cháu mean v có nghĩa là, muốn nói • what does this word mean? chữ này có nghĩa là gì? • what do you mean by that? anh nói vậy nghĩa là gì? medical adj y të • medical care chăm sóc y tế meet v gặp, gặp gỡ • nice to meet you hân hạnh được biết cô meeting *n* cuôc hop member n hội viên, thành viên message n tin nhắn • do you want to leave a message for her? ông có muốn nhắn cô ấy điều gì không? method n cách, phương pháp middle adj giữa • in the middle of nowhere không biết đang ở chỗ nào might v có thể • I might run a bit late tôi có thể đến trễ một chút military adj & n quân đội million n triệu • millionaire triệu phú mind v phiền • would you mind if I sat here? tôi

ngồi đây có phiền đến ông không?

miss v 1 lõ, mất • he missed the 8 o'clock bus anh

ấy lỡ chuyến xe buýt tám giờ 2 nhớ • we miss

minute n phút

them so much chúng tôi nhớ ho lắm model n 1 kiểu, mẫu 2 người mẫu thời trang modern adj tân thời, hiện đại • modern times thời nay **moment** *n* chốc lát, giây lát • *just a moment* xin đơi một chút **money** *n* tiền, tiền bac month *n* tháng • *monthly* hàng tháng, mỗi tháng một lần more adj & adv nhiều hơn, thêm, nữa • the more the better càng nhiều càng tốt **morning** *n* buổi sáng • *yesterday morning* sáng hôm qua • tomorrow morning sáng mai most adj & adv nhiều nhất, phần lớn • most of all nhất là mother n me, má • stepmother me kế mouth n miêng, mồm **move** ν 1 cử đông 2 xê dịch, di chuyển, don **movie** *n* phim • *movie theater* rap chiếu phim, rap xi-nê much adj & adv nhiều • thank you so much! cám ơn anh nhiều lắm! music n nhac, âm nhac must v phải • you must come on time các anh chị phải đến đúng giờ my adj của tôi, của em, của con, của cháu • my pleasure rất hân hạnh

Ν

name *n* tên • *what's your name?* tên anh là gì? • first name tên • last name ho • middle name tên đệm nation n quốc gia natural adj ty nhiên nature n thiên nhiên near prep & adv gần necessary adj cần thiết need v cần • needless to say không cần nói cũng **never** *adv* • *better late than never* thà trễ còn hơn không bao giờ

new adj mới • brand new mới toanh **news** *n* tin tức • *breaking news* tin giờ chót newspaper n báo • daily newspaper nhật báo **next** *adj* kế tiếp, kế bên nice adj tử tế, đáng mến night n ban đêm • good night ngủ ngon nhé nine adj & n (số) chín **no** *adj* & *adv* không • *no problem* không có chi none pron không gì, không ai • none of them came bọn họ chẳng ai đến cả north adj & n (hướng) bắc, (miền) bắc not adv không • something is not right có điều gì không ổn note n điều ghi chú nothing pron không có gì • I saw nothing in there tôi thấy trong đó không có gì cả notice ν để ý **now** *n* bây giờ, hiện giờ • *right now* ngay bây giờ • nowadays ngày nay **number** *n* số, con số • *telephone number* số điện thoai • even number số chẵn • odd number số lẻ

0 of prep của • the economy of Vietnam nền kinh tế của Việt Nam off prep & adv 1 khỏi, ra khỏi • to be off duty khỏi trực 2 đi, ra • he took 10% off ông ấy bớt đi mười phần trăm offer v mời, đề nghị office v văn phòng **officer** *n* sĩ quan; cảnh sát viên; viên chức official adj chính thức **often** *adv* thường, thường xuyên • *how often do* you go shopping? bao lâu cô mới đi mua sắm một lần? **old** *adj* 1 cũ 2 già • *how old are you?* anh bao nhiêu tuổi? on prep trên, vào • on time đúng giờ • on and off lúc có lúc không **once** *adv* một lần • o*nce and for all* một lần cuối cùng rồi thôi

one *adj* & *n* một • *one day at a time* chuyện ngày nào lo ngày ấy only 1 adj duy nhất, một • only child con một 2 adv chỉ, chỉ có open v & adj mo • is the library open today? hôm nay thư viện có mở cửa không? **opportunity** *n* cơ hội, dịp may or conj hay, hoặc • rain or shine dù mưa hay nắng order v 1 ra lệnh, yêu cầu 2 gọi • what would you like to order? bà muốn gọi món gì? other adj khác • other things những điều khác our adj của chúng tôi, của chúng ta out prep & adv ra, ra ngoài, ra khỏi • to go out đi outside adj, prep & adv bên ngoài, ở ngoài, ngoài • to go outside đi ra ngoài over 1 prep & adv trên 2 adj hết • it's over hết rồi **owner** *n* chủ, chủ nhân

P

page n trang, trang giấy pain n sư đau đớn, sư đau khổ paint v sơn, vẽ paper n giấy parent n cha, me • parents cha me • grand-parents ông bà part n phần, bộ phận • to take part in tham dự partner n bạn, người cùng làm việc party n buổi tiệc • birthday party tiệc sinh nhật pass v đi qua, vượt qua past prep qua, qua khỏi • go past the bridge đi qua khỏi cây cầu patient adj kiên nhẫn • be patient hãy kiên nhẫn patient² n người bệnh, bệnh nhân pay v trả, trả tiền • to pay one's debt trả nợ peace n hoà bình; sự yên tĩnh people n người, người ta perhaps adv có lẽ **period** *n* 1 thời kỳ, thời gian 2 dấu chấm

person n người personal adj cá nhân, riêng tư **phone** *n* điện thoại • **phone** call cú điện thoại pick v chon, lấy, hái picture *n* hình, tranh, ảnh • to take a picture chup ảnh piece n mẩu, miếng, mảnh • a piece of paper một mảnh giấy place n nơi, chỗ, chốn • to go places đi đây đi đó plan n chương trình, kế hoach plant v trồng • to plant trees trồng cây play v chơi, đùa giốn • to play the piano chơi dương cầm police n cảnh sát • police officer cảnh sát viên • police station đồn cảnh sát **politics** *n* chính tri **poor** *adj* 1 nghèo 2 tồi, kém 3 tội nghiệp • *poor* you! tội anh quá! popular adj phổ thông, phổ biến **position** *n* vi trí, địa vi possible adj có thể • as soon as possible càng sớm càng tốt power n 1 sức mạnh, quyền lực 2 điện lực practice v thực hành, tập luyên **prepare** ν chuẩn bi, sửa soan present n 1 hiện tại • at present hiện giờ 2 quà tăng **president** *n* chủ tịch, giám đốc, tổng thống **pretty**¹ *adj* xinh, dễ thương **pretty**² adv khá, cũng • **pretty good** cũng hay price n giá, giá cả • at any price với bất cứ giá nào **private** *adj* tư, riêng tư **probably** *adv* có lẽ, có thể **problem** *n* vấn đề, chuyện rắc rối • *is there a* problem? có rắc rối gì không? **process** *n* tiến trình **product** *n* sản phẩm professor n giáo sư **program** *n* chương trình project n dự án, đề án

property n tài sản **protect** ν bảo vê, che chở prove v chứng minh, chứng tỏ provide v cung cấp, cho public adj công, công công • the public công chúng **pull** ν kéo, giât purpose n mục đích • on purpose cố tình push ν đẩy, xô put v đặt, để

0

quality n phẩm chất • best quality phẩm chất thương hang question n câu hỏi, vấn đề • out of the question không thành vấn đề quickly adv nhanh chóng quit v bỏ, từ bỏ • to quit smoking bỏ hút thuốc quite *adv* rất, hoàn toàn

R

race n cuôc chay đua raise v nâng lên, làm cao lên rate n tỷ lệ • at any rate dù sao đi nữa • exchange rate tỷ giá hối đoái rather adv phần nào, thà • to die rather than quit thà chết còn hơn là bỏ cuộc • had/would rather thích (làm gì) hơn reach v đến, đạt đến read v đọc • reader độc giả ready adj sẵn sàng real adj thật, có thật **really** *adv* thật, thật là • *really?* thật vậy sao? reason n lý do receive ν nhận, tiếp nhận recent *adj* mới, mới đây recognize v nhận ra, thừa nhận record n số sách red adj đỏ reduce v giảm, bớt **relationship** *n* mối quan hệ

religion n tôn giáo seek v tìm, kiếm remain v còn lai, vẫn • she remained silent cô ấy seem ν có vẻ, dường như • so it seems dường vẫn im lăng như là vâv remember ν nhớ sell v bán remove ν lấy đi send v gởi • to send a text message gởi một tin report v tường trình, thuật lại, báo cáo require ν yêu cầu, đòi hỏi sense n 1 giác quan 2 ý nghĩa, nghĩa lý • that respond v trả lời, đáp doesn't make sense vô lý quá responsibility n bổn phận, nhiệm vụ serious adj nghiêm chỉnh, nghiêm trọng serve ν phục vụ • dinner is served bữa ăn tối đã rest ν nghỉ ngơi • restroom phòng vê sinh result n kết quả • as a result kết quả là sẵn sàng return ν về, trở về, trở lai **service** *n* sư phục vụ set v sắp, xếp, đặt • you're all set việc của anh đã rich adj giàu, phong phú right adj phải, đúng • is it right? đúng không? xong xuôi rise v nổi lên, dâng lên, mọc lên • sunrise bình seven adj & n båy several adj vài, một số, nhiều minh shake v rung, lắc, run • to shake hands with road n đường rock n đá someone bắt tay ai role n vai trò • to play a role đóng vai share v chia, san se **room** *n* phòng, chỗ she pron cô ấy, chi ấy, bà ấy rule n luât lê • as a rule theo lê shoot v 1 bắn 2 quay phim run ν chay, chảy short adj 1 ngắn 2 thấp should v nên • what should I do now? bây giờ tôi S nên làm gì đây? safe adj an toàn, bình an • safe and sound bình **shoulder** *n* vai an vô sư show ν chỉ, cho thấy same adj giống, giống nhau side *n* bên, phe • *side by side* bên nhau save v 1 cứu, cứu giúp 2 để dành, dành dụm sign v ký, ký tên • signature chữ ký **say** ν nói • **you don't say!** anh nói thật sao? similar adj giống, tương tự school *n* trường, trường học • *elementary school* simple adj đơn giản, giản dị trường tiểu học • *high school* trường trung học since adv & conj từ đó, từ khi • ever since kể từ score n điểm, tỷ số dao đó sea n biển • seashore bờ biển sing v hát, ca • singer ca sĩ season n mùa single adj 1 đơn, chiếc 2 độc thân • single parent seat n chỗ ngồi • please take a seat xin mời bà ngồi cha/me độc thân second¹ adj thứ nhì, thứ hai • on second thought sister *n* chi, em gái • *older sister* chi • *younger* sister em gái • half-sister chi/em cùng cha khác sau khi suy nghĩ lại second² n giây • just a second đợi một giây mẹ or cùng mẹ khác cha sit v ngồi • sit down! ngồi xuống! **section** *n* khu, khu vực, phần **situation** *n* tình trạng, tình hình, hoàn cảnh security n sự an toàn **see** ν thấy • **you see?** anh thấy chưa? **six** adj & n sáu

size n co • what size shoes do you wear? ông • radio station đài phát thanh mang giày số mấy? stay v ở, ở lại • how long will you stay? anh sẽ ở skill n tài năng, kỹ năng lai bao lâu? skin n da • skin disease bênh ngoài da **step** *n* bước • *step by step* từng bước một small adj nhỏ, bé still adv vẫn, còn • the night is still young còn smile v mím cười, cười sớm mà **so** *adv* 1 như vậy, như thế, • *is that so*? vây sao? stop ν dừng, ngừng, thôi 2 quá, lắm • the food is so good! thức ăn ngon store n tiêm, cửa hiệu quá! story n chuyên, truyên street n đường • what street is your house on? society n xã hôi soldier *n* lính, quân nhân nhà anh ở đường nào? **some** *adj* vài, một ít • *some time* một thời gian, **strong** *adj* manh, khoẻ ít lâu **student** *n* học sinh, sinh viên • *college student* sinh viên đai hoc someone pron ai, người nào something pron gì, điều gì study v hoc, nghiên cứu sometimes pron đôi khi, thỉnh thoảng **stuff** *n* điều, việc • *all kinds of stuff* đủ thứ cả son n con trai • eldest son con trai cå • only son style n kiểu, cách, phong thái con trai duy nhất subject n chủ đề, đề tài song n bài hát, bài ca success *n* thành công soon adv sóm, chóng • see you soon hẹn sóm such adj như thế, như vậy • such as như là, ví du gặp lai cô nhé sound *n* âm thanh, tiếng **suddenly** *adv* thình lình, đôt nhiên south adj & n (hướng) nam, (miền) nam suffer v bi, chiu, đau khổ space n không gian, chỗ, chỗ trống suggest ν yêu cầu, đề nghi speak v nói, nói chuyên • do you speak Vietnamsummer n mùa hè, mùa ha • summer vacation ese? anh có nói tiếng Việt không? kỳ nghỉ hè special adj đặc biệt support v 1 ủng hộ 2 nuôi nấng, chu cấp specific adj cu thể, rõ ràng sure adj chắc, chắc chắn speech n lời nói, bài diễn văn **system** *n* hệ thống spend v 1 trải qua 2 tiêu, xài • to spend a lot of T money tiêu tiền nhiều sport n thể thao table n bàn spring n mùa xuân take v lấy. cầm lấy staff n nhân viên talk v nói, nói chuyện stage n sân khấu task n nhiệm vụ, phận sự, việc làm stand v đứng • stand up! đứng dậy! tax n thuế • to pay taxes đóng thuế star n ngôi sao **teach** ν dạy, giảng dạy start v bắt đầu • let's get started chúng ta bắt đầu teacher n giáo viên nhé! team n đội, toán, nhóm state n 1 tình trạng 2 tiểu bang **technology** *n* kỹ thuật station n 1 nhà ga • train station ga xe lửa 2 đài television n vô tuyến truyền hình

tell v bảo, kể ten adj & n mười term n thời han, học kỳ test n 1 sư thử nghiệm 2 bài thi than conj so với • more than ever before hơn bao giờ hết thank v cám on • thanks a lot cám on nhiều that 1 adj đó, đấy, ấy • in that moment trong khoảnh khắc đó 2 conj rằng, là • she thought that she was right cô ấy nghĩ rằng mình đúng 3 pron mà • all the things that you said tất cả những điều mà ông nói the art người, cái, con, etc. • the TV in the kitchen cái ti-vi trong nhà bếp their adj của họ, của chúng nó them pron họ, chúng nó **then** *adv* rồi, thì • *and then what?* rồi sao nữa? there adv 1 đó, ở đó • who's there? ai đó? 2 có • how many people are there in the meeting? có bao nhiêu người trong buổi hop? these adj & pron những... này, mấy... nay • it's been very warm these days mấy hôm nay trời nóng quá they pron họ, chúng nó • who are they? họ là ai? **thing** *n* điều, vật, việc • *how are things*? mọi việc thế nào? **think** ν nghĩ, suy nghĩ • *what do you think about* the situation? ông nghĩ sao về tình hình này? third adj thứ ba this adj & pron này, cái này, điều này • what's this? cái này là cái gì? those adj & pron những... đó **though** 1 *adv* tuy vậy, dù vậy 2 *conj* mặc dầu, tuy thought n ý nghĩ thousand adj & n nghìn, ngàn • thousands of dollars hàng ngàn đô-la three adj & n (số) ba

time n 1 thời gian, thì giờ • what time is it? mấy giờ rồi? 2 lần • how many times have you been here? cô đã đến đây mấy lần rồi? to prep đến • from A to Z từ đầu đến cuối today n & adv hôm nay • what's today's date? hôm nay là ngày tháng mấy? together adv cùng, cùng nhau, với nhau tonight n & adv tối nay, đêm nay too adv 1 cũng • we like it, too chúng tôi cũng thích nó 2 quá • it's too much quá đáng top n đỉnh, đầu • on top of that ngoài ra **total** *n* tổng số, tổng công tough adj 1 khó, đầy thử thách 2 bền bỉ, dai, dẻo toward prep về phía town n phố, thi xã **trade** *n* thương mai, việc buôn bán traditional adj truyền thống travel v du lich, đi xa treat v 1 đối xử 2 chữa (bênh) tree n cây • apple tree cây táo trip n chuyến đi • have a good trip! chúc anh đi chơi vui vẻ! chúc thương lô bình an! **trouble** *n* chuyên rắc rối • *the trouble is* rắc rối ở chỗ là **true** *adj* thật. có thật • *is it true*? có thật không? **truth** *n* sự thật • *to tell the truth* nói thật try v 1 cố gắng 3 thử • try this dress on mặc thử cái áo đầm này đi turn v rē, queo, quay • turn left here rē trái ở đây **two** *adj* & *n* (số) hai type n loại, kiểu • what type of car do you like? ông thích loại xe gì? under prep dưới, bên dưới • under age tuổi vị thành niên understand v hiểu • I don't understand tôi

U

không hiểu

ugly *adj* xấu, xấu xí **unfair** *adj* không công bằng, bất công

throw v quăng, ném

through 1 adv kỹ càng • I'll think it through tôi

sẽ suy nghĩ kỹ về chuyện đó 2 prep qua, xuyên

unit n đơn vi, cái unnecessary adj không cần thiết until prep & conj cho đến, cho đến khi • we will not call you until after midnight sau nửa đêm chúng tôi mới goi anh up prep & adv lên • please speak up! xin nói lớn upon prep trên, vào, khi • upon receiving this letter khi nhân được bức thư này urgent adj khẩn cấp, khẩn thiết • urgent care chăm sóc khẩn cấp us pron chúng tôi, chúng ta use v dùng, sử dụng useful adj có ích, tiện lợi usually adj thường, thông thường

V

vague adj không rõ ràng valid adj có giá trị, hợp lệ • valid license giấy phép hợp lệ value n giá tri van n xe tải, xe khách various adj khác nhau, nhiều • for various reasons vì nhiều lý do khác nhau vary v thay đổi vegetable n rau **vegetarian** *adj* & *n* (người) ăn chay very adv rất, lắm • very good! hay lắm! view v xem, coi visit ν thăm, thăm viếng voice n giọng, giọng nói • I've lost my voice tôi bị mất giọng vote v bầu cử, bỏ phiếu

W

wait v đợi, chờ • waiting room phòng đợi walk v đi, bước, đi bộ wall n tường, vách want v muốn • do you want to say something? anh muốn nói gì không? war n chiến tranh

watch v xem, coi, theo dõi • to watch TV xem truyền hình, coi ti-vi • watch out! coi chừng! watch² n đồng hồ đeo tay • smart watch đồng hồ thông minh

water n nước

way n 1 lối đi • go this way đi lối này 2 cách, cách

we pron chúng tôi, chúng ta

wear v mang, mặc, đội, đeo, để, bôi, xức • to wear sunglasses mang kính mát • to wear a ring đeo nhẫn • to wear flip-flops mang dép • to wear shorts mặc quần cộc • to wear one's hair long để tóc dài • to wear perfume bôi nước hoa week n tuần, tuần lễ • long weekend cuối tuần có ngày lễ • have a good weekend! chúc cuối tuần vui vė!

weight n sức nặng, cân nặng

well 1 adj khoẻ • I am very well tôi khoẻ lắm 2 adv giỏi, hay, đẹp, khá • she sings pretty well cô ấy hát khá hay

west adj & n (hướng) tây, (miền) tây

what adj & pron gì, sao • what did you say? cô nói sao? • what day is it today? hôm nay là thứ mấy?

whatever adj & pron bất cứ cái gì, bất cứ điều gì • whatever! sao cũng được!

when conj khi, khi nào • when are you guys leaving? khi nào các anh đi?

where adv đâu, ở đâu • where are you going now? bây giờ ông đi đâu? • where are you now? hiện giờ anh đang ở đâu?

whether conj có... hay không • We don't know whether they will come or not chúng tôi không biết họ có đến không

which adj & pron nào, cái nào • which one do you prefer? chị thích cái nào hơn?

while 1 *conj* trong khi, trong lúc • *he left while I was sleeping* anh ấy ra đi lúc tôi đang ngủ 2 n một lát, một chốc • we chatted for a while chúng tôi nói chuyện trong một lát white adj & n (màu) trắng

who pron ai, người nào, mà • excuse me, who are you? xin lỗi, ông là ai? • the man who called you didn't leave a message người mà gọi anh không để lai lời nhắn

whole *adj* & *n* toàn thể, trọn, cả • *the whole* month cả tháng • as a whole nói chung

why adv tại sao, vì sao • why did you do that? tại sao bà lai làm thế?

wide adj rộng • far and wide khắp nơi wife n vo • whose wife is she? bà ấy là vo của ai? will v sẽ, định, muốn • I will call you soon tôi sẽ goi anh ngay

win ν thắng, chiến thắng

wind n gió

window n cửa sổ • please close the window đóng giùm cái cửa sổ lai

wish v ước, mong • I wish you all the best chúc anh moi sư tốt đep

with prep với • with pleasure xin sẵn lòng, rất hân hanh

without prep không có, thiếu • it goes without saying rõ ràng là

woman n đàn bà, phu nữ

wonder v thắc mắc, tư hỏi • no wonder thảo nào word *n* chữ, tiếng, lời, từ ngữ • *to be at a loss for* words không nói được lời nào

work v 1 làm việc • to go to work đi làm 2 chạy, hoạt động • the clock is not working đồng hồ không chạy, đồng hồ đứng

worker *n* thợ, công nhân

world n thế giới • around the world khắp thế giới

worry v lo, lo lắng • don't worry đừng lo would v sē, muốn • how would you like your steak? anh muốn món thịt như thế nào?

write ν viết, viết thư wrong adj sai, trái • to tell right from wrong biết phân biệt phải trái

yard n sân • backyard sân sau • front yard sân

year n năm • every year hằng năm • all year long suốt năm

yellow adj & n (màu) vàng

yes adv vâng, da, ừ

yet adv 1 còn, vẫn • there is much yet to do vẫn còn nhiều việc phải làm • not yet chưa, chưa xong 2 tuy, nhưng, mà • it is unbelievable, yet *true* khó tin nhưng có thất

you pron anh, chị, cô, ông, bà, em, con, cháu • how are you doing? anh thế nào?

young adj trẻ

your adj của anh, của chi, của ông, của bà yourself pron chính anh, chính chị, chính ông, chính bà • **you said it yourself** chính anh đã nói như vây

7

zealous adj hăng hái, sốt sắng, háo hức **zebra** *n* ngưa vằn **Zen** *n* thiền

zero adj & n (số) không • zero degrees không độ **zest** *n* sự thú vị, sự thích thú • *the story lacks* zest truyện không thú vị

zipper *n* dây kéo

zone n vùng, khu vực • time zone múi giờ **zoo** *n* sở thú

PHOTO CREDITS

All photos used in this book are from Shutterstock.

Page 5 © pongwan sukpoka

Page 6 © vuong kha thinh

Page 60 top left © Tieu Bao Truong

Page 60 top right 1 © Stockbym

Page 60 top right 2 © Tieu Bao Truong

Page 60 bottom © Quang nguyen vinh

Page 72 top © Vietnam Stock Images

Page 72 bottom left © John Bill

Page 72 bottom right © Tieu Bao Truong

Page 86 top left © Sakura Image Inc

Page 86 top right © Jimmy Tran

Page 86 middle © Saigoneer

Page 86 bottom left © Galyna Andrushko

Page 86 bottom right © OlegD

Page 105 © LocHuynh

Page 106 top © Vietnam Stock Images

Page 106 bottom left © JunPhoto

Page 106 bottom right 1 © Vadim Petrakov

Page 106 bottom right 2 © Eric Isselee

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Copyright © 2022 by Tri C. Tran

All rights reserved.

Cover image © Shutterstock by Dragon Images

Library of Congress Catalog-in-Publication Data in progress

ISBN 978-0-8048-5334-7; ISBN 978-1-4629-2303-8 (Ebook)

First edition, 2022

Distributed by

North America, Latin America & Europe

Tuttle Publishing
364 Innovation Drive
North Clarendon,
VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.
Tel: I (802) 773-8930; Fax: I (802) 773-6993
info@tuttlepublishing.com
www.tuttlepublishing.com

Japan

Tuttle Publishing
Yaekari Building, 3rd Floor,
5-4-12 Osaki, Shinagawa-ku,
Tokyo 141 0032
Tel: (81) 3 5437-017; Fax: (81) 3 5437-0755
sales@tuttle.co.jp
www.tuttle.co.jp

Asia Pacific

Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd. 3 Kallang Sector #04-01 Singapore 349278 Tel: (65) 6741-2178 Fax: (65) 6741-2179 inquiries@periplus.com.sg www.tuttlepublishing.com

26 25 24 23 22 5 4 3 2 I

Printed in Singapore 2201TP

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

"Books to Span the East and West"

Tuttle Publishing was founded in 1832 in the small New England town of Rutland, Vermont [USA]. Our core values remain as strong today as they were then—to publish best-in-class books which bring people together one page at a time. In 1948, we established a publishing office in Japan—and Tuttle is now a leader in publishing English-language books about the arts, languages and cultures of Asia. The world has become a much smaller place today and Asia's economic and cultural influence has grown. Yet the need for meaningful dialogue and information about this diverse region has never been greater. Over the past seven decades, Tuttle has published thousands of books on subjects ranging from martial arts and paper crafts to language learning and literature—and our talented authors, illustrators, designers and photographers have won many prestigious awards. We welcome you to explore the wealth of information available on Asia at www.tuttlepublishing.com.



To access the online audio recordings and printable flash cards for this book:

- 1. Check that you have an Internet connection.
- Type the following URL into your web browser. https://www.tuttlepublishing.com/reading-and-writing-vietnamese

For support, you can email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

NOTES

The perfect book for beginners to learn the basics of the Vietnamese language!

This book contains the following essential features:

- A basic introduction to the sounds of Vietnamese and how to read and write them
- The system of Vietnamese tones—how to distinguish and pronounce them correctly
- Audio recordings by native speakers help you accurately pronounce Vietnamese words
- Downloadable flashcards to learn the Vietnamese alphabet and basic vocabulary
- Extensive exercises and dialogues to reinforce each lesson
- An index of grammatical terms and a Vietnamese-English glossary

Tri C. Tran, PhD teaches linguistics and Vietnamese at the University of California, Irvine. He obtained his PhD and MA in Romance Linguistics and Literatures from the University of California, Los Angeles, and his BA in Spanish Linguistics from the University of California, Irvine. His publications include language textbooks (Spanish and Vietnamese) and a bilingual dictionary for students of linguistics. He co-authored *Vietnamese Stories for Language Learners* with Tram Le (Tuttle, 2017).

